

## UNIT FIVE

### Lesson -1-

### My kind of food – نوع الطعام المفضل لدي

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

stew (n.) أكلة اليخني (مرق)	flavour نكهة/مذاق	avoid يتجنب
stewed مطهو/ساخن	chilli فلفل	energy طاقة
grilled مشوي	cereal طعام من حبوب	carton علبة/صندوق
spicy كثير التوابل	olive oil زيت الزيتون	bar شريط
tasty لذيذ المذاق	parsley مقدونس	slice (n.) شريحة
herbs أعشاب	couscous نوع من الطعام	packet رزمة/علبة
spice (مشهور في شمال أفريقيا) أحد التوابل/يتبل		

★ What do these people think of fast food? Listen and write the correct letter next to each person's name.

ما هو رأي هؤلاء الأشخاص بالطعام سريع الاعداد؟ استمع واكتب الحروف الصحيحة جوار اسم كل شخص.

#### Tapescript:

**R Marsden:** Hello and welcome to Speak Out. I'm Rob Marsden and our subject this week is fast food.

We all know teenagers eat a lot of fast food. Sometimes it's burgers, sometimes it's pizzas, and sometimes it's fish and chips. Other favourites are kebabs, Mexican tacos and fried chicken. But do all teenagers like fast food? Let's find out what five teenagers, Latifa, Adam, Hanaa, Nasseem and Ross think. Latifa, what do you think of fast food?

**Latifa:** You don't have to pay very much for it. That's the best thing about it.

**R Marsden:** Adam?

**Adam:** It's always the same. You never get anything different. For example if you get a burger in one town, it tastes exactly the same as a burger in another town.

**R Marsden:** Hanaa?

**Hanaa:** It's great if you're in a hurry because you never have to wait very long for it. You go in, order it and five minutes later you're eating it.



**R Marsden:** Nasseem?

**Nasseem:** I love it. I eat it two or three times a week. My favourites are fish and chips and kebabs. My mother says I should eat lunch at home, but I prefer to go to a fast food restaurant.

**R Marsden:** Ross?

**Ross:** I think fast food is very bad for you. Doctors say most fast food contains too much oil and fat. If you only eat fast food, you aren't eating enough vegetables.

**Answers:** 1- Latifa B cheap 2- Adam A boring  
3- Hanaa D quick 4- Nasseem C delicious  
5- Ross F unhealthy

### Activity Book-Lesson 1

**B- Complete the phrases with words from the box. Then match the complete phrases to the pictures.**

أكمل العبارات مع كلمات من الصندوق. ثم صل العبارات الكاملة الى الصور.

bread	chocolate	lemonade	soup
sugar	sweets	coffee	tomato paste

- 1-C) a bar of chocolate لوح شوكولا  
2-G) a bottle of lemonade قنينة عصير ليمون  
3-B) a bowl of soup صحن شوربة  
4-F) a slice of bread شريحة خبز  
5-D) a tin of tomato paste علبة معجون طماطة  
6-E) a cup of coffee فنجان قهوة  
7-H) a packet of sweets علبة حلويات  
8-A) a spoonful of sugar ملعقة سكر ممتلئة

**C- Read and choose the correct words to complete the essay.**

اقرأ ثم اختر الكلمات الصحيحة لأكمل المقالة.

bowl	cup	delicious	egg	energy طاقة
glass	healthy صحي	meal	oil	slice
weight	carton	flavour طعم	fruit	onion بصل
bake يخبز	cakes	chilli فلفل	course وجبة	grilled مشوي
honey عسل	lemonade	salt	vegetables	



## **My kind of food** by Eman Malek

I like food and I eat quite a lot. I always try to eat a **healthy** diet. I think if you eat the right food, you have plenty of ① **energy** for the day and you don't put on ② **weight** and get fat. I never miss breakfast. I think it's the most important ③ **meal** of the day. I usually start with a ④ **bowl** of cereal and a ⑤ **glass** of fruit juice. Then I have a fried ⑥ **egg** with fried tomatoes and a ⑦ **slice** of bread. I always fry my eggs in olive ⑧ **oil**. I love the flavour. I think it's ⑨ **delicious**. I usually have a ⑩ **cup** of tea with a little milk and no sugar. Sugar isn't good for the teeth, so I avoid it.

I make my own sandwiches to take to college for lunch. My favourite sandwiches are chicken with lettuce, onion, tomato and chilli. I know the ⑪ **onion** makes my breath smell, but I don't care! The chilli gives the sandwich a lovely, spicy ⑫ **flavour**. I also have two pieces of ⑬ **fruit**, usually an apple and a banana, and a ⑭ **carton** of fruit juice. My mother makes supper for the whole family. We often start with a bowl of vegetable soup. The main ⑮ **course** is usually a stew - lamb, chicken or beef with four or five different ⑯ **vegetables**. My mum always puts lots of tasty herbs and spices in her stews, but she doesn't like very hot flavours, so she never adds ⑰ **chilli**. She gets a bit annoyed with us if we add ⑱ **salt** and pepper. She says she uses just the right amount! Sometimes we have ⑲ **grilled** lamb kebabs. I love them, but it's quite a lot of trouble cooking them on a barbecue outside. With our main course, we have rice, couscous, boiled potatoes or bread. I drink water and avoid drinks like ⑳ **lemonade** and cola. We usually end the meal with fruit.

اطلب النسخة الاصلية من مكتب الشمس حصرا

موبايل / ٠٧٨٠٥٠٣٠٩٤٢ / ٠٧٩٠١٧٥٣٤٦١



★ Write an essay like the one above about what you eat. The essay should be about 150 words.

أكتب مقالة مثل المقالة المكتوبة أعلاه حول ماذا تأكل. تكون المقالة بحدود (١٥٠) كلمة.

We need food to survive for the rest of our lives. We get out nutrition like vitamins and proteins, but not all foods are good for us. Some give us too much fat, cholesterol or sugar. If we don't control what we are eating, we can get into big trouble, because some nutritious foods also have things that are bad for our bodies, like too much fat and sugar.

People need to be careful of what they are eating, otherwise they are going to regret it later. Poor eating habits can lead to high cholesterol, for the rest of their life. The only way you can control that is by taking drugs and carefully watching their diet. People with high cholesterol can't ever eat any fatty foods like pizza or cheeseburgers. They also can't eat any sweet foods like candy or cake. People with poor diets often put their children at risk. Poor nutrition can also lead to heart attacks.

There are some other foods like wheat cereal, bread and fish you can eat safely without worrying. You can get vitamins and proteins from these foods. Those things are very important in our life. If people care about their bodies, they should take care it by eating nutritious foods like fruits and vegetables and exercising.

## Lesson 2

### عادات صحية - Healthy habits

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

energetic (adj.) نشيط	energy (n.) نشاط	ridiculous مضحك / سخيف
gum يمضغ / صمغ	coach (n.) مدرب	chew يمضغ

★ Read and choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

اقرأ ثم اختر الكلمات الصحيحة لإكمال المحادثة.

boiled	chips	energy	food	glasses
grilled	lemonade	vegetables	wrong	

Layla: You don't have much **energy** at the moment, do you, Rashid?

Rashid: You're right, Layla. I never feel very energetic.

Layla: I think perhaps you're eating the ① **wrong** kind of food.

Rashid: Really?

Layla: Yes. Your coach and I have decided to give you a special diet. I've written a list of ② **food** that you can and can't eat. Have a look at it.



**Rashid:** This is ridiculous, Layla. I can't eat burgers. I mustn't eat ③ **chips**. I must avoid fried food.

**Layla:** But there are lots of things you can eat. You can have ④ **grilled** chicken, for example, with ⑤ **boiled** potatoes and green ⑥ **vegetables**.

**Rashid:** Can I drink ⑦ **lemonade**?

**Layla:** No, you can't. You must drink lots of water. In fact, you should drink eight ⑧ **glasses** of water a day. And another thing, Rashid, you shouldn't go to bed late.

**Rashid:** How many hours' sleep should I get?

**Layla:** At least eight hours a night.

★ Complete the rules by crossing out the wrong words.  
أكمل القواعد عن طريق حذف الكلمات الخطأ.

### Modals: can/can't, must/mustn't, should/shouldn't أفعال المودال المساعدة

**Can't and mustn't mean** someone is not allowed to do something.

**can't/mustn't** - تعني أن شخص ما لا يسمح له عمل شيء ما.

**After a modal verb, we use the infinitive without to.**

- بعد فعل المودال المساعد نحن نستخدم مصدر بدون to.

**We do not add an (s) to the third person singular of modal verbs.**

- نحن لانضيف (s) الشخص الثالث لافعال المودال المساعدة.

**Must/mustn't is stronger than should/shouldn't.**

- must/mustn't تكون أقوى من should/shouldn't.

**Modals can/can't, must/mustn't, should/shouldn't + infinitive** (مصدر)

### الاستخدام - Use

★ أفعال المودال المساعدة يمكنها جميعا ان تستخدم في جمل **مثبتة** (السماح permission)

وفي جمل **النفي** لتقديم تحريم / حظر (prohibition). فعل المودال المساعد (must) هو الاقوى

ويستخدم في الجمل **الأمرية** الرسمية. وفعل المودال المساعد الاضعف هو (should).

- **المثبت (Affirmative):**

- We **can** use the computer lab in school hours. (لقد سمح لنا بذلك)

- There **must** be a teacher in the lab when we use it. (انها قاعدة)

- We **should** sign our names in a book in the lab. (انها قاعدة، ولكننا ليس دائما نعمل بها)

- **النفي (Negative):**

- You **can't** take food into the library. (غير مسموح بذلك)

- You **mustn't** touch this machinery. (انها قاعدة)

- We **shouldn't** walk on the grass. (انها فكرة جيدة عدم فعل ذلك)

- **السؤال (Question):**



- **Can't** we take food into the library?
- Can** we not take food into the library?
- **Shouldn't** we walk on the grass?
- **Should** we not walk on the grass?

## ملاحظة :

١. لا تستخدم (**mustn't**) في جمل الاستفهام، ما عدا في الاسئلة الذيلية:  
- He **must** tidy his room, **mustn't** he?
٢. ان صيغة الماضي للفعل المساعد (**can**) هي (**could**):  
- We **couldn't** eat out sandwiches in the library.
٣. ليس لفعل المودال المساعد (**must**) صيغة ماضي، استخدم في صيغة الماضي (**didn't have to**)، مثل:  
- He **didn't have to** tidy his room because his sister had done it.

**Activity Book-Lesson 2****A- Use the prompts to write sentences with can and must or mustn't.**أستخدم المحفزات لكتابة جمل مع **can** و **must** أو **mustn't**.**Example:** You (**eat**) grilled fish and meat, but you (**avoid**) fried food.- You **can** eat grilled fish and meat, but you **must** avoid fried food.You (**read**) my essay, but you (**copy**) it.- You **can** read my essay, but you **mustn't** copy it.**1-** You (**borrow**) my mobile, but you (**pay**) for any calls you make.- You **can borrow** my mobile, but you **must pay** for any calls you make.**2-** You (**phone**) me tonight, but you (**call**) me after 11 p.m.- You **can phone** me tonight, but you **mustn't call** me after 11 p.m.**3-** We (**have**) a party, but we (**clear up**) afterwards.- We **can have** a party, but we **must clear up** afterwards.**4-** She (**make**) a cake, but she (**use**) all the butter and eggs.- She **can make** a cake, but she **mustn't use** all the butter and eggs.**5-** You (**use**) my camera today, but you (**take**) any photos of me.- You **can use** my camera today, but you **mustn't take** any photos of me.**6-** I (**have**) tea at night if I want to, but I (**drink**) coffee.- I **can have** tea at night if I want to, but I **mustn't drink** coffee.**7-** They (**play**) video games, but they (**turn off**) the computer by 10 p.m.- They **can play** video games, but they **must turn off** the computer by 10 p.m.**8-** They (**stay**) at my house tonight, but they (**leave**) tomorrow morning.- They **can stay** at my house tonight, but they **must leave** tomorrow morning.



## B- Complete the school rules with must, mustn't or can.

أكمل قواعد المدرسة باستخدام must / mustn't / can.

### Baghdad College School Rules

College starts at 8.00 a.m. You **must** be on time. You **mustn't** be late. If you are late, you ① **must** go to the school office and give the reason.

You ② **mustn't**, smoke anywhere in the college or playground.

You ③ **can** bring your mobile phone to school, but you ④ **mustn't** use it in class.

You ⑤ **can** bring food and drink to school if you want, but you ⑥ **mustn't** take it into the library or classrooms.

You ⑦ **mustn't** eat, drink or chew gum in class.

You ⑧ **must** be polite to your teachers and the other students.

You ⑨ **can** use the gym after school, but you ⑩ **must** tell a PE teacher you are going to.

\* PE = physical Education *تربية بدنية*

## ★ Match the sentence beginnings to the endings. *صل بدايات الجمل الى النهايات.*

### The Oasis Gym

#### IMPORTANT INFORMATION FOR NEW MEMBERS

We want to keep our gym clean, safe and pleasant. We also want our members to avoid accidents and injury. Please follow these guidelines and instructions.

- 1- (B) You must warm up for at least 10 minutes **before you start lifting weights. If you don't, you can injure yourself.**
- 2- (L) If you have never trained before, **you should not train every day.**
- 3- (D) You should train for about forty-five minutes, **four times a week.**
- 4- (K) You should not come to the gym when **you are ill or injured.**
- 5- (A) You should wear comfortable clothes **and trainers for your exercise.**
- 6- (H) You must not wear outdoor shoes **in the gym.**
- 7- (G) You should not always do **the same exercises.**
- 8- (F) You should change your exercise routine **once a month.**
- 9- (C) You must ask an instructor if you **do not know how to use one of the machines.**
- 10- (I) You must not leave the **weights on the gym floor.**
- 11- (J) You must drink plenty of **water during your gym session.**
- 12- (E) You must not spend more than 20 **minutes on the running machines. Other people want to use them too.**



## Lesson 3

## She has to wear a uniform

عليها أن ترتدي زيا موحدًا

## Vocabulary : مفردات

weightlifter رافع الأثقال

uniform زي موحد

suit (n.) بدلة

tie (n.) ربطة عنق

driving licence رخصة قيادة

peel (v.) يقشر

chop (v.) يفرم/يقطع

grate (v.) يقشر/يبرش

lay (a table) يرتب

Match two sentences to each picture. صل جملتين لكل صورة.

- A- She **has to** be good with her hands.  
 B- She **has to** wear a uniform.  
 C- They **don't have to** wear suits and ties.  
 D- She **doesn't have to** sit at a desk and use a computer.  
 E- He **has to** be very fit and healthy.  
 F- She **doesn't have to** pay for plane tickets.  
 G- They **have to** eat a lot.  
 H- He **has to** have a healthy diet.

## Answers:

- 1- C and G (possibly E and H)  
 2- E and H (possibly C)  
 3- A and D (possibly C)  
 4- B and F (possibly D)

★ Who said what? Match the people above to their words below.

من قال ماذا؟ صل الناس فوق لكلماتهم في أدناه.

- 1- [4] I **have to** fly to Dubai twice tomorrow. (the flight attendant) مضيئة طيران  
 2- [1] We **had to** eat fourteen eggs for breakfast this morning. (the weightlifter)  
 3- [2] Do I **have to** play in the match next Saturday? (the basketball player)  
 4- [3] I **didn't have to** go to work yesterday. The salon was closed. (the hairdresser)

★ Study the language box. Think of more examples. تأمل صندوق اللغة. فكر بأمثلة أكثر.

## Expressing necessity: have to + infinitive لظهور الضرورة نستخدم

\* We use have to to say that something is necessary now or in the future.

نحن نستخدم have to لنقول ان شيء ما ضروري الآن أو في المستقبل.

- What time do you have to be at work every day? (question)  
 - I have to get up early tomorrow. My plane leaves at six in the morning. (affirmative)  
 - We don't have to hurry. There's plenty of time. (negative)  
 - Did you have to wear a uniform at your primary school? No, I didn't. (question)



## Have to + infinitive (مصدر)

### الاستخدام - Use

\* استخدم (مصدر + have to) (→) لتقول ان شئ ما هو ضروري، مثل:

- I **have to** get up early tomorrow. My plane leaves at six in the morning.

### الشكل - Form

- I **have to** eat more vegetables. (مضارع بسيط)

- My father **had to** go to the doctor yesterday. (ماضي بسيط)

- We won't **have to** go to school tomorrow. (مستقبل)

- I didn't **have to** pay for my ticket. (ماضي بسيط)

- I have never **had to** go to hospital. (ماضي تام)

- Do you **have to** work tonight?

\* اسئلة (question):

- Did you **have to** wear a uniform at your primary school?

- Will you **have to** see the doctor again?

- Have you ever **had to** call an ambulance?

ملاحظة: أن (must) و (have to) لهما نفس المعنى:

- You **have to** answer all the questions in the test.

- You **must** answer all the questions in the test.

## Activity Book-Lesson 3

A- Fill in the blanks with **have to** or **don't have to**.

أملأ الفراغات مع **don't have to / have to**

Flat 15  
Biblos Building  
Hamra Street  
Beirut  
Lebanon

Dear Mike,

How are you? I have a holiday job working for my aunt and uncle. They own a restaurant called Arabian Nights here in Beirut. It's hard work, but I enjoy it. It's just right for me because I hate getting up early and in this job I **don't have to** get up until one in the afternoon. You see, I only ① **have to** be at work at three in the afternoon. I always ② **have to** work late - until midnight, in fact. But you know me - I don't get tired at night. I ③ **have to** wear a uniform, but I don't mind. It's white trousers and a white T-shirt with the name of the restaurant on it.

I'm a helper in the kitchen, so I ④ **have to** help the cooks. I ⑤ **don't have to** cook anything. I just ⑥ **have to** peel and chop vegetables, grate cheese and carrots, put things away in the fridge and keep the worktops clean and tidy. I also ⑦ **have to** do the washing-up and clean the pots and pans. I'm not a waiter, so I ⑧ **don't have to** lay the tables, serve



the food or clear the tables.

The only trouble with this job is getting home at night. I finish work at about midnight. My aunt and uncle ⑨ **have to** stay and lock up the restaurant every night, so they can't leave until one in the morning and I ⑩ **have to** wait for them. But the pay is good and my aunt and uncle are nice people to work for.

Write and tell me about your job.

Best wishes,

Nasseem

### D- Study the rule box and write two more examples for each verb.

تأمل صندوق القواعد ثم اكتب مثالين إضافيين لكل فعل.

#### **mustn't and don't have to**

\* We use **mustn't to** say that something is forbidden or not allowed.  
نحن نستخدم **mustn't** لنقول أن شيء ما محظور أو غير مسموح به.

- We **mustn't** make a noise. My mother is asleep.
- You **mustn't** use your mobile phone in class. It is not allowed.

\* We use the negative of have to when we say that something is not necessary.

نحن نستخدم صيغة النفي (**have to**) عندما نقول أن شيء ما هو غير ضروري.

- You **don't have to** do both exercises if you don't have time.
- I **didn't have to** walk to school today. My father drove me there.

#### **mustn't and don't have to**

#### **الاستخدام - Use**

\* (**mustn't**) تعني "غير مسموح"

\* (**don't have to**) تعني "ليس من الضروري".

- You **mustn't** leave. (غير مسموح لك بالمغادرة)
- You **don't have to** leave. (يمكنك المغادرة أو يمكنك البقاء. أنه شيء عائد لك)
- لاحظ: للحدث عن عدم الضرورة بصيغة الماضي، نستخدم (**didn't have to**)، مثل:
- I **didn't have to** get up at five yesterday morning.

★ **Complete the sentences with mustn't or not have to.**

أكمل الجمل مع **mustn't** / **not have to**

- 1- You **mustn't** smoke anywhere in the school. It's forbidden.
- 2- I'm on holiday, so I **don't have to** get up early tomorrow.
- 3- You **mustn't** read my letters. They're private.



- 4- Halim is so lucky. He **doesn't have to** pay for plane tickets. His father is a pilot and gets free tickets!
- 5- We **don't have to** take a dictionary to the class, but it would probably be very useful.
- 6- You **mustn't** dive into the pool. The water isn't deep enough.
- 7- We **don't have to** go to the beach. We can go to the park instead if you prefer.
- 8- The bus arrived at exactly ten o'clock, so I **didn't have to** wait very long.
- 9- You **mustn't** park there. You will get into trouble with the police.
- 10- You **don't have to** cook tonight, Mum. We're going out to a restaurant.

### Lesson 4

من الافضل أن تغسله أولاً **You'd (You had) better wash it first**

### Vocabulary : مفردات

salty مالح	yoghurt لبن مصفى	garlic ثوم	boil (v.) يغلي
tasteless بلا طعم/عديم الذوق		supper عشاء	starving جوعاً
spinach سبانخ	microwave فرن موجي		

★ Mariam and her brother Khaled are cooking. Listen and read.

Then practise the dialogue. أستمع ثم أقرأ. ثم تدرب على الحوار. مريم وأخيها خالد يطبخون.

Mariam: Oh no! I've put too much salt in the stew. What shall I do?

Khaled: You'd better add a tin of tomatoes. That'll make it less salty.

Mariam: And perhaps I'd better add some potatoes too.

Khaled: Good idea.

Mariam: Shall I add some yoghurt as well?

Khaled: You'd better not. It'll make the stew go very white.

★ Match the problems with the responses. صل المشاكل مع الاستجابات.

Problems المشاكل	Responses الاستجابات
1- This soup is a bit tasteless.	B- You'd better add some parsley and lemon juice.
2- The rice is cold.	D- I'd better heat it in the microwave.
3- Shall I put some more sugar in the fruit salad?	A- I think you'd better not. It's already too sweet.
4- I'm afraid the coffee is boiling hot.	C- You'd better leave it to cool down for a few minutes.
5- I'm starving. Can I make a sandwich?	E- You'd better not. Supper will be ready in five minutes.
6- Shall I boil the spinach?	F- You'd better wash it first. It might be dirty.



**Had better****الاستخدام - Use**

\* استخدم (had better) لتعطي نصيحة قوية أو تحذر الناس (بضمنهم نحن) ماذا يعملوا:

- I have to be at the airport by ten, so I'd **better** leave now.

- You'd **better** add some salt to this soup. It's rather tasteless.

\* عند النفي استخدم (had better not):

- I feel terrible

- You'd **better not** go to work today.

لاحظ: (had better) مماثلة في المعنى الى (should). استخدم (shouldn't) لتعطي نصيحة عامة أو رأي. استخدم

(had better) لتعطي نصيحة لحالة خاصة:

- We **should** meet more often. (رأي عام)

- We'd **better** meet at 11 o'clock out side the station. (رأي حول حالة خاصة)

**Activity Book-Lesson 4**

**A- Match the words to the pictures. Write the numbers 1 to 15 next to the correct words** صل الكلمات الى الصور. اكتب الأرقام من ١ الى ١٥ الى جانب الكلمات الصحيحة

barbecue	(7)	charcoal	(8)	cheese grater	(11)
electric mixer	(3)	fork	(14)	rubber gloves	(10)
lighter	(5)	matches	(15)	onion	(13)
plaster	(4)	recipe book	(9)	sink	(1)
teapot	(12)	washing-up liquid	(2)	wood	(6)

**B- Listen. Answer the questions and complete the advice.**

استمع ثم أجب على الأسئلة ثم أكمل النصيحة.

**Tapescript:**

**Presenter: One.**

**Mariam:** Ow! Look, Khaled! I've cut my finger. I was grating cheese for the spaghetti and I cut my finger on the cheese grater!

**Khaled:** Is it bad?

**Mariam:** No it's not serious. But it's bleeding a little.

**Khaled:** You'd better wash it and put a plaster on it.

**Presenter: Two.**

**Boy:** (loud sniffs)

**Mother:** Are you OK Peter?

**Peter:** Yes. I think so.

**Mother:** What do you mean, you think so? Why are you crying?

What's the matter? **Peter:** It's because I'm chopping this onion. The smell of it makes me cry. I really hate chopping onions.

**Mother:** You'd better not chop them. I'll do it for you.



**Presenter: Three.**

**Woman:** Shall we have lamb kebabs for supper?

**Man:** Good idea! We can grill them on the barbecue outside.

**Woman:** OK. I'd better look for some wood and charcoal.

**Man:** It's OK. There's plenty of wood and charcoal out here. But I can't find any matches to light the fire.

**Woman:** We haven't got any. You'd better use this lighter.

**Presenter: Four.**

**Mother:** Can you do the washing-up, please, Majida?

**Majida:** OK.

**Mother:** There's an awful lot to do, I'm afraid.

**Majida:** Never mind. Where's the washing-up liquid?

**Mother:** Next to the sink. And, Majida....

**Majida:** Yes?

**Mother:** You'd better wear gloves. The washing-up liquid is quite strong. It could give you skin problems.

**Majida:** Where are the gloves, Mum?

**Mother:** In the cupboard under the sink.

**Presenter: Five.**

**Little boy:** What's that book?

**Girl:** It's a recipe book. I want to make a chocolate cake and this book has some very good recipes. First I have to mix the butter and sugar and flour. I'll use a fork for that.

**Boy:** Here, you'd better use the electric mixer. It's quicker and easier.

**Girl:** Good idea. It's much better than a fork.

**Presenter: Six.**

**Mother:** Have you boiled the water, Nadia?

**Nadia:** Yes, mum. And I've made the tea.

**Mother:** Lovely. Pour me a cup of tea, please.

**Nadia:** Ow!

**Mother:** What's the matter?

**Nadia:** I've burnt my finger on the teapot.

**Mother:** You'd better put it in cold water for a few minutes.

**Nadia:** I'll bring you your tea first.

**Mother:** You'd better not. You might burn your finger again.



**Answers:**

- 1- **a- What is the girl's problem?** She has cut her finger.  
**b- What is her brother's advice?** You'd better wash it and put a plaster on it.
- 2- **a- Why is the boy crying?** He is chopping onions.  
**b- What's his mother's advice?** You'd better not do it.
- 3- **a- Why do they need wood and charcoal?** They want to have a barbecue.  
**b- What can't he find?** He can't find any matches.  
**c- What is her advice?** You'd better use a lighter.
- 4- **a- What does Majida have to do?** She has to do the washing up.  
**b- What is her mother's advice?** You'd better wear gloves.
- 5- **a- What is the girl making?** She's making a chocolate cake.  
**b- What is she using to mix the butter and sugar?** She's using a fork.  
**c- What is her little brother's advice?** You'd better use an electric mixer.
- 6- **a- What has Nadia made?** She has made some tea.  
**b- What has she burnt herself on?** She's burnt herself on the teapot.  
**c- What is her mother's advice about the burn?** You'd better put it in cold water.  
**d- Nadia wants to bring her mother some tea first. What does her mother say?** You'd better not/You might burn your finger again.

★ Which words go together? Match the nouns and noun phrases in the box to the correct verbs.

أي الكلمات تكون مناسبة أو متلازمة مع بعضها؟ صل الاسماء وعبارات الاسم في الصندوق الى الافعال الصحيحة.

a cake	a fire	butter, sugar and flour
cheese	eggs	meat
some water	the table	onions
		the washing-up

- 1- grate cheese
- 2- chop onions
- 3- light a fire
- 4- do the washing-up
- 5- mix butter, sugar and flour
- 6- beat eggs
- 7- grill meat
- 8- make a cake
- 9- lay the table
- 10- boil some water



اذا كنت في مشكلتك...

mountain bike دراجة جبلية  
electric guitar فيتار كهربائي  
crazy مجنون / مفتون  
romantic رومانسي / خيالي

exciting مشر  
safari رحلة الى البرية/ الغابات  
nursery school مدرسة حضانة  
facilities تسهيلات/ منشآت

**champion** بطل  
**bossy** دكتاتور/نزع للسيطرة

★ Read the magazine article and complete the interviewer's questions with these phrases: اقرأ مقالة من مجلة ثم أكمل أسئلة المقابلة بهذه العبارات:

- 1- any place in the world.  
2- £ 1,000 in a competition.  
3- famous person.  
4- in an emergency.  
5- in your looks.  
6- Prime Minister of your country.  
7- some kind of serious trouble.

**Answers:** The questions should be in this sequence: 2, 3, 1, 6, 5, 7, 4.

**Read the examples and complete the rule. اقرأ الأمثلة ثم أكمل القاعدة.**

\* We use the second conditional to talk about unreal and imagined situations. نحن نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتحدث عن حالات غير حقيقية وخيالية.

- I **could send** e-mails to all my friends **if I had** a computer.
- What **would** you **do if** you **found** 3 million Iraqi dinars in the street?
- **If I didn't have** a camera, I **wouldn't remember** all the places I've been to.

*If clause*  
*If + past tense,*

**would/could + infinitive.**

**Second conditional:** الحالة الشرطية الثانية

**الشكل - Form**

\* كَوْنُ جملة الحالة الشرطية الثانية مع (ماضي بسيط + *if* →) في جملة *if* (جملة فعل الشرط) و (مصدر + *would/could/might* →) في الجملة الرئيسية:

- If I had a lot of money, I'd buy a bigger house.
- I'd buy a bigger house if I had a lot of money.

**لاحظ!** توجد فارقة في نهاية جملة *if* (جملة فعل الشرط) عندما تأتي أولاً، ولكن لا توجد فارقة عندما تأتي جملة *if* ثانية في الجملة.





## الاستخدام - Use

\* استخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للحدث عن حالات غير حقيقية الآن او عن حالات غير محتملة في المستقبل:

- *If I had wings, I'd fly all over the world.*
- *He'd be much fitter if he stopped smoking.*
- *If we had a swimming pool, I could learn to swim.*

## إذا... If...

**We asked two teenagers about their ambitions, their dreams and their fears. Here are their answers.**

سألنا اثنين من المراهقين عن طموحاتهما، أحلامهما ومخاوفهما. هذه اجابتهما.

**Q: If you won £1,000 in a competition, what would you buy?**

إذا ربحت ١٠٠٠ باوند في منافسة، ماذا ستشتري؟

**Camilla:** *I'd spend half the money on driving lessons and the rest on a mobile phone and a digital camera.*

كاميلا: أود أن أصرف نصف المبلغ على أخذ دروس والباقي لشراء هاتف محمول وكاميرا رقمية.

**Aziz:** *I'd buy a mountain bike and an electric guitar.*

عزيز: أود أن أشتري دراجة جبلية وغيتار كهربائي.

**Q: Which famous person would you like to meet if you could choose anyone in the world?**

أي شخص مشهور تحب مقابلته إذا أمكنك اختيار أي شخص في العالم؟

**Camilla:** *I'd choose J.K. Rowling, the writer of the Harry Potter books.*

*Her books are brilliant and they've made children all over the world happy. She's now the richest woman in Britain and she got rich all by herself.*

كاميلا: أود أن اختار ج.ك. رولنج مؤلفة كتب هاري بوتر. ان كتبها رائعة وجعلت الأولاد في جميع أنحاء العالم سعداء. انها الآن أغنى امرأة في بريطانيا وحصلت على ثروتها بنفسها.

**Aziz:** *I'd like to meet the French football player, Zinedine Zidane. I'm crazy about football and he's amazing.*

عزيز: أحب أن اقابل لاعب كرة القدم الفرنسي زين الدين زيدان. أنا مفتون بكرة القدم وهو مدهش.

**Q: If you could visit any place in the world, where would you go?**

إذا أمكنك زيارة أي مكان في العالم، أين تود أن تذهب؟

**Camilla:** *I'd like to go to Petra in Jordan. I've seen photos of all the pink stone buildings, but it's my dream to go there, Apparently tourists visiting Petra can even spend a few nights in Bedouin tents. I think it would be so romantic and exciting.*

كاميلا: أحب الذهاب الى البتراء في الأردن. لقد رأيت صوراً عن جميع المباني الحجرية الوردية، لكنه حلمي أن أذهب الى هناك. بشكل واضح يمكن للسواح الذين يزورون البتراء أن يقضوا عدة ليالي في خيم البدو. أنا أعتقد أنه سيكون خيالي ومثير جداً.



**Aziz:** I'd like to go to Kenya. I'd love to go on safari and see elephants, lions, giraffes and all those beautiful animals in the wild. It wouldn't be the same as seeing them in zoos. It would be really interesting. That's my dream.

عزيز: أحب أن أذهب الى كينيا. أحب أن أذهب الى البراري ومشاهدة الفيلة، الاسود، الزرافات وجميع الحيوانات الجميلة في الحياة البرية. انها ليست مثل ماتراه في حدائق الحيوان. انها ستكون فعلاً ممتعة. ذلك هو حلمي.

**Q:** What changes would you make if you were the prime Minister of our country? ماهي التغييرات التي تود اجراءها اذا كنت رئيس وزراء لدولتنا؟

**Camilla:** I'd open more nursery schools. Lots of women who want to work can't because they have to look after young children all the time. كاميليا: أود أن أفتح الكثير من مدارس الحضانة. الكثير من النساء يرغبون بالعمل لكنهم لا يستطيعون بسبب أن عليهم الاهتمام باطفالهم الصغار طوال الوقت.

**Aziz:** I'd improve sports facilities in primary and secondary schools. If children started tennis, swimming and athletics at a younger age, we'd have more champions in this country.

عزيز: أود تحسين المنشآت الرياضية في المدارس الابتدائية والثانوية. اذا بدأ الأولاد ممارسة لعبة التنس، السباحة وألعاب الميدان بعمر أصغر، سيكون لدينا أبطال أكثر في هذا البلد.

**Q:** What would you change in your looks if you could change one thing? ماذا تود أن تغير في مظهرك اذا أمكنك تغيير شيء واحد؟

**Camilla:** I wouldn't change anything. I'm perfect already! Only joking! Of course I'd like to change my looks. For one thing, I'd like to have bigger eyes!

كاميليا: لا أود تغيير أي شيء. ان مظهري مثالي الآن! أمزح فقط! طبعاً اذا أود أن أغير مظهري. شيء واحد، أود أن يكون لدي عينان أكبر!

**Aziz:** I'd like to be stronger. I think I'm a bit thin.

عزيز: أحب أن أكون أقوى. أعتقد اني نحيف قليلاً.

**Q:** If you were in some kind of serious trouble, who would you ask for help? ان كنت في مشكلة كبيرة نوعاً ما، ممن تود طلب المساعدة؟

**Camilla:** I'd go to my grandmother. She always has good advice. كاميليا: أود أن أذهب الى جدتي. انها دائماً لديها نصيحة جيدة.

**Aziz:** I'd ask my great uncle Salem for help. I trust him completely.

عزيز: أود أن أطلب المساعدة من عمي البارع سالم. أنا أثق به بشكل كامل.

**Q:** If you had to leave home in an emergency, which two things would you take with you? اذا كان عليك مغادرة البيت لسبب طارئ، ما الشيئان اللذان تود أن تأخذهما معك؟

**Camilla:** I'd take a bottle of water and my MP3 player. Then I'd be able to relax and listen to music when things were bad.

كاميليا: أود أن أخذ قنينة ماء والمشغل متعدد الوسائط الخاص بي. ثم أود أن أكون قادرة على الاسترخاء والاستماع الى الموسيقى عندما تكون الأمور سيئة.

**Aziz:** I'd take a photo of my family and my camera. I'm always happy when I'm taking photos.

عزيز: أود أن أخذ صورة لعائلي وأخذ كاميرتي. أنا دائماً أكون سعيداً عندما التقط الصور.



**Activity Book-Lesson 5**

**A- Study the language box, then write sentences in the second conditional. Add a comma where necessary.**

أكتب جملاً في الحالة الشرطية الثانية. أضف فاصلة حيثما يكون ضرورياً.

1- If she (**have**) shorter hair, she (**look**) nicer.

- If she had shorter hair, she would look nicer.

2- You (**not be**) tired if you (**go**) to bed earlier.

- You wouldn't be tired if you went to bed earlier.

3- If he (**not smoke**), he (**be**) a lot healthier.

- If he didn't smoke, he would be a lot healthier.

4- What (**you do**) if you (**find**) 3 million Iraqi dinars in the street?

- What would you do if you found 3 million Iraqi dinars in the street?

5- If you (**have**) wings, where (**you fly**)?

- If you had wings, where would you fly?

6- Everybody (**like**) him if he (**not be**) so bossy.

Everybody would like him if he was not so bossy.

7- I (**tell**) you the answer if I (**know**) it.

- I would tell you the answer if I knew it.

★ Write your own answers to the interview questions on Student's Book

page 61. ☐ اكتب اجاباتك الخاصة الى أسئلة المقابلة على صفحة ٦١ من كتاب الطالب. (الحالة الشرطية الثانية).

- If I **won** £ 1,000 in a competition, I **d buy** an MP3 player and a laptop. ☐

- If I **could** choose to meet a famous person, I **d like** to choose Kadhim Al Saher the famous Iraqi singer.

- If I **could** visit any place in the world, I **d like** to go to pyramids in Egypt.

- If I **were** the Prime Minister of our country, I **d improve** healthy condition in our hospitals.

- If I **could** change one thing in my looks, I **wouldn't change** any thing.

- If I **were** in some kind of serious trouble, I **d ask** my father for help.

- If I **had** to leave home in an emergency, I **d take** my camera and a bottle of water.



## Activity Book-Lesson 6

### Vocabulary : مفردات

honest صادق/مخلص

by mistake عن طريق الخطأ

change (n.) تغيير/استبدال

wallet محفظة جيب (للأوراق النقدية)

cheat يخدع

purse جزدان (خاصة للنساء) للعملات المعدنية وأحياناً الورقية أيضاً

A- Use the prompts to write quiz questions in the second conditional.  
استخدم المحفزات لكتابة أسئلة قصيرة في الحالة الشرطية الثانية.

### How honest are you? كم أنت صادقاً؟

- 1- If a shop assistant (**give**) you too much change by mistake, what (**you do**)?  
- If a shop assistant gave you too much charge by mistake, what would you do?
- 2- If the waiter (**forget**) to give you your bill at a cafe, (**you tell**) him?  
- If the waiter forgot to give you your bill at a café, would you tell him?
- 3- If you (**find**) 2 million Iraqi dinars in the street, (**you take**) it to the police station?  
- If you found 2 million Iraqi dinars in the street, would you take it to the police station?
- 4- If you (**see**) your friend cheating in an exam, what (**you do**)?  
- If you saw your friend cheating in an exam, what would you do?
- 5- If a very rich friend (**lend**) you 50,000 Iraqi dinars and (**forget**) about it, (**you keep**) quiet or (**you remind**) your friend?  
- If a very rich friend lent you 50,000 Iraqi dinars and forgot about it, would you keep quiet or remind your friend?
- 6- If you (**crash**) your scooter into an expensive car and nobody (**see**) you, what (**you do**)?  
- If you crashed your scooter into an expensive car and nobody saw you, what would you do?
- 7- (**you read**) your sister's or brother's letters and diary if you (**find**) them in their cupboard?  
- Would you read your sister's or brother's letters and diary if you found them in their cupboard?
- 8- How (**you feel**) if you (**lose**) your bag containing 50,000 Iraqi dinars?  
- How would you feel if you lost bag containing 50,000 Iraqi dinars?



**D- The police have just returned your purse, which you lost in the street. Write a letter saying thank you to the person who handed it in. Start like this.** أعادت اليك الشرطة توا محفظتك التي أضعتها في الشارع. أكتب رسالة شكر للشخص الذي سلمها.

**Dear**

*Thank you very much for handing in my purse to the police station. I was very*

*worried when I lost it last week. It had quite a lot of money in it, about £200 in cash and gift cards. I was really upset. I have to admit that I'm very surprised, and so unbelievably grateful that my purse was returned intact. I know this sounds cheesy, but it touched me on a deeper level because this reaffirmed my faith in people as a whole. I was feeling especially upset because two other unfortunate circumstances have happened to me.*

*I really want to thank you for your faithfulness that you turned in the purse.*

**Ahmed**

## Lesson 7

**If I were you, I wouldn't worry** لو كنت مكانك، لما قلقت

**Vocabulary :** مفردات

spot (n.) بقعة      weightlifting رفع الأثقال

★ **Listen and read. Then practise the dialogue.** أستمع واقرأ ثم تدرب على الحوار.

### Tapescript:

**Layla:** I get spots quite often. What do you think I should do?

**Suha:** If I were you, I'd wash my face three times a day.

**Layla:** OK. I'll try that.

**Suha:** And you should stop eating sugar and sweets.

**Layla:** I'm not sure about that. I tried it, but it didn't work.

★ **Match the problems to the advice. Then check your answers with a partner.** صل المشاكل الى النصيحة. ثم دقق اجابتك مع زميلك.



Problems المشاكل	Responses الاستجابات
1- You want to lose weight.	G- Stop eating bread and cakes./Take more exercise.
2- You aren't sleeping well.	A- Avoid coffee at bedtime./Read a boring book in bed.
3- You want to put on weight.	B- Eat more meat and fish./Do weightlifting at the gym.
4- You can't wake up in the mornings.	E- Go to bed earlier./Buy an alarm clock.
5- You want to get better marks in Maths.	C- Get extra lessons from the Maths teacher./Do extra homework.
6- You have a bad cold.	F- Spend the day in bed./Drink hot lemon and honey.
7- You have a sore knee.	H- Stop riding your bike for a week. / Put ice on it.
8- You want to get fitter.	D- Go for a run every day. / Join a gym.

★ Read the language box. Then do Exercises A to C in the Activity Book. اقرأ صندوق اللغة ثم حل تمارين كتاب النشاط.

### Asking for and giving advice or opinions

#### طلب واعطاء نصيحة أو آراء

- What do you think I should do about my spots? How can I get rid of them? ماذا باعتقادك علي أن أفعل بالنسبة للبقع على جسي؟ كيف أتخلص منها؟
- If I were you, I wouldn't worry لو كنت مكانك لما قلقت
- Why don't you go to the doctor? لماذا لاتذهب الى الطبيب
- You should wash your hair every day. And you shouldn't eat chocolate or sweets. عليك أن تغسل شعرك كل يوم. وأن لاتأكل الشوكولا أو الحلويات.

★ استخدم (should) لطلب نصيحة أو رأي:

- should I go to Egypt to study?
- what do you think I should do?

★ استخدم أي مما يلي لتعطي نصيحة.

- should → I think you should study at home.
- imperative → Go to Egypt if you think you'll enjoy it.
- why don't you....? → Why don't you study in Iraq?
- if I were you, I would.... → If I were you, I would study at home.

لاحظ! ان عبارة (if I were you) هي الاكثر شيوعاً بالاستخدام من (if I was you).



## Lesson 8

**I wish I could fly** أتمنى لو يمكنني الطيران

- ★ Complete what Halima says with the words below. Then listen and check your answers. أكمل ما تقولته حليلة مع الكلمات في ادناه. ثم أستمع ودقق اجابتك.

was    knew    didn't have

**Tapescript:**

**Boy:** Why don't you come with us, Halima?

**Halima:** I can't go with you. I really wish I could. I have to do my Maths homework. If only I didn't have to do it.

**Halima:** I wish I **knew** the answer to this Maths problem. I wish I **didn't have** to study Maths at school. If only I **was** good with numbers.

- ★ Imagine you are the people in these pictures. For each picture, make as many sentences as you can using I wish or If only.

*I wish / if only* تخيل انك الاشخاص في هذه الصورة. كون جملاً لكل صورة. قدر ما تستطيع مستخدماً *I wish / if only* ملاحظة: أن العبارتين (If only/I wish) لها نفس المعنى وهو (أتمنى).

**Answers:**

- 1) - I wish I **could** go to France for my holidays. (wishes for the future)  
 - I wish I **spoke** perfect French. (wishes for the present)  
 - If only I **lived** in Paris. (present)
- 2) - I wish I **didn't have** to stay in England this summer. (present)  
 - If only I **didn't live** in London. (present)
- 3) - I wish/If only I **could** be scientist. (future)
- 4) - I wish/If only I **drove** a motorcycle. (present)  
 - I wish/If only I **didn't have** to drive a bus. (present)
- 5) - I wish/If only I **had** a sport car. (present)
- 6) - I wish/If only I **didn't have** to do this homework. (present)  
 I wish/If only I **could** go riding. (future)



**Activity Book-Lesson 8**

**A- Look at Student's Book page 63 and complete the rule and the examples.** أنظر الى صفحة (٦٣) من كتاب الطالب ثم أكمل القاعدة والامثلة.

**Wishes for the present تمنيات للحاضر**

\* we use [ I wish or If only + the past simple tense ] to talk about wishes for the present.

نحن نستخدم (صيغة ماضي بسيط + I wish/If only →) للحديث عن تمنيات للحاضر.

- I wish I had lots of money
- If only I was/ were rich.
- I wish I didn't need to work so hard.

**Wishes for the future تمنيات للمستقبل**

\* we use [ I wish or If only + would/could ] to talk about wishes for the future.

نحن نستخدم (I wish/If only + would/could →) للحديث عن تمنيات للمستقبل.

- If only Salwa would chang the day of her party.
- I wish I could come to your party next week, but I'm going to be away.

**التمني للحاضر والمستقبل - Present and future wishes****الشكل - Form**

\* لتكوين جمل تمني للحاضر، استخدم (ماضي بسيط + I wish →)، مثل :

- He wishes he knew more people in the town. (هو لا يعرف الكثير من الناس)
- I wish I had more friends. (ليس لدي الكثير من الاصدقاء)
- We all wish we were riches. (نحن لسنا اغنياء)
- I wish I could speak lots of languages.

(لا يمكنني التحدث بأي لغة / لا يمكنني التحدث بالعديد من اللغات)

\* لتكوين جمل تمني للمستقبل، استخدم (مصدر + I wish + would/ could →)، مثل :

- I wish it would get cooler. (لكنها سوف لن تكون اكثر برودة)
- Sultan wishes his brother would help him. (لكنه سوف لن يساعده)



B- Listen and match two wishes to each picture. أستمع ثم صل آمينيتين الى كل صورة.

### Tapescript:

**Presenter: One.**

**Girl 1:** *I wish I didn't live in this noisy building.*

**Presenter: Two.**

**Man 1:** *I wish I could leave work early today.*

**Presenter: Three.**

**Man 2:** *I wish I had a torch.*

**Presenter: Four.**

**Girl 2:** *I wish I had an umbrella.*

**Presenter: Five.**

**Man 1:** *If only the room wasn't so hot.*

**Presenter: Six.**

**Man 3:** *I wish I knew how to fix this car.*

**Presenter: Seven.**

**Girl 3:** *If only you could come here next month.*

**Presenter: Eight.**

**Man 3:** *I wish somebody would come and help me.*

**Presenter: Nine.**

**Girl 2:** *I wish the bus would come.*

**Presenter: Ten.**

**Girl 1:** *If only I could get to sleep.*

**Presenter: Eleven.**

**Man 2:** *If only the moon would come out.*

**Presenter: Twelve.**

**Girl 3:** *I wish you would phone more often.*

**Answers:** A: 2,5 B: 7,12 C: 4,9 D: 6,8 E: 1,10 F: 3,11

C- Now match these wishes to the pictures above. Write the letters in the boxes. Are they wishes for the present or the future? Write p (present) or f (future) in the second box. صل هذه الامنيات الى الصور في اعلاه.

اكتب الحروف داخل الصندوقين. هل ان هذه الامنيات للمضارع أم للمستقبل؟ اكتب (P) للماضي (f) للمستقبل في الصندوق الثاني.



p = present, f = future

the picture the tense

- |  |     |     |
|--|-----|-----|
| 1- I wish the neighbours would stop making that noise.     | [E] | [f] |
| 2- I wish it wasn't such a dark night.                     | [F] | [p] |
| 3- If only there was a garage somewhere.                   | [D] | [p] |
| 4- I wish they would put air-conditioning in this office . | [A] | [f] |
| 5- I wish you didn't live so far away .                    | [B] | [p] |
| 6- If only it would stop raining .                         | [C] | [f] |

## Lesson 9

### If only I'd listened لو أنني فقط أصغيت

Read the article and choose the best answers.

اقرأ المقالة وأختار أفضل أجابات. (قطعة مهمة في الامتحانات)

### DANA'S STORY قصة دانا

Dana El Nasser tells Teen Magazine about the worst day of her life and her biggest regret.

تخبر دانا الناصر مجلة المراهقين عن أسوأ يوم في حياتها وأكبر ندم

Last month, my friend Layla El Fayed invited me to go to the park for a picnic with her family. I was really looking forward to it. I always have fun when I'm with Layla and it's always nice to get away from my own family for a change. Unfortunately, my little brother Faisal heard about the picnic and said he wanted to come too. He's only nine and he's a bit silly sometimes. For example, he likes pulling Layla's long hair and he usually tries to make Layla and me play football with him. It can be quite annoying for us when we just want to chat and listen to music. So, when he asked me to take him on the picnic with Layla of course I said no and then I didn't think about it again.

دعني صديقتي ليلى الفايذ الشهر الماضي للذهاب الى متنزه للتنزه مع عائلتها. كنت أطلع لهذه الرحلة. أنا دائما استمتع عندما أكون مع ليلى ومن اللطيف دائما أن أذهب بعيداً عن عائلتي للتغيير. لسوء الحظ، أخي الصغير فيصل سمع عن النزهة وقال انه يريد ان يأتي أيضا. انه بعمر تسع سنوات فقط ويكون في بعض الأوقات سخيفا. مثلا، انه يحب أن يشد شعر ليلى الطويل وعادة ما يحاول أن يجعلني وليلى أن نلعب كرة القدم معه. وهذا مايزعجنا تماما عندما نريد أن نتحدث ونستمع الى الموسيقى، لهذا عندما طلب مني ان اخذه الى النزهة مع ليلى. طبعاً قلت كلا ولم أفكر بذلك مرة أخرى.

On the day of the picnic, I got up early and got my things ready. I had made two big cakes to take with me and I'd bought fruit and some bottles of lemonade. Layla and her family had agreed to pick me up at my house at ten o'clock. At half past nine, Faisal came into the sitting room with his sports bag. 'I'm ready to go,' he said. 'When's Layla going to be here?'

في يوم النزهة، استيقظت مبكراً وجهزت حاجياتي. لقد صنعت كيكيتين كبيرتين لأخذهما معي واشترت فاكهة وبعض قناني عصير الليمون. وافقت ليلى وعائلتها على اخذي من بيتي عند الساعة العاشرة. عند الساعة التاسعة والنصف، جاء فيصل الى غرفة الجلوس مع حقيبته الرياضية. قال: "أنا جاهز للذهاب". متى ستكون ليلى هنا؟

I was so angry I didn't answer him and he went to look for mum. A few minutes later my mother came into the sitting room with him. 'Why can't Faisal go with



you?' she asked. 'He'll be good this time.' I said, 'Sorry, mum, I can't take him. Layla and her family don't have room in the car.' I didn't know if this was true, but it stopped Faisal and my mother arguing with me. At ten o'clock, I heard the El Fayed's car and ran outside to meet them. My mother and Faisal never saw that the El Fayed's were taking two cars to the park and there was plenty of space in both of them that day.

كنت غاضبة جداً لم أحبه فذهب لبحث عن أمي. دقائق قليلة، وجاءت أمي إلى غرفة الجلوس معه. لماذا لا يستطيع فيصل أن يذهب معك؟ سألت. سيكون جيداً هذه المرة. قلت أسفة أمي، لا يمكنني أن أخذه. ليلى وعائلتها ليس لديهم مكان في السيارة. أنا لم أكن أعرف أن كان هذا صحيحاً، لكنه أوقف فيصل وأمي في المناقشة. عند الساعة العاشرة، سمعت سيارة الفايد وركضت إلى الخارج لمقابلتهم. أمي وفيصل لم يشاهدوا عائلة الفايد وهم يستقلون سيارتين للذهاب إلى المتنزه وكان يوجد الكثير من الأماكن في السيارتين ذلك اليوم.

It was fun at the park to start with. Everyone loved my cakes. Layla and I talked for ages about our plans for the future. We played on the swings and ran about, and we played cards. The weather was perfect - not too hot and with a nice breeze. Suddenly, at two o'clock everything changed. I got a phone call on my mobile. It was my mother. She told me that Faisal was in hospital. After I'd left the house he had gone out on his bike without telling her. A car had hit him. He was unconscious and he had a broken wrist. My mother was crying.

كانت توجد وسائل تسلية في المتنزه للبدء بها. الجميع أحبوا الكيك الذي أعددت. أنا وليلى تحدثنا كثيراً عن خططنا للمستقبل. لعبنا على الأرجح وركضنا ولعبنا الورق. كان الطقس مثالياً - ليس حار كثيراً وفيه نسمة لطيفة. فجأة، عند الساعة الثانية، كل شيء قد تغير. وصلني اتصال على هاتفي. كانت والدتي، أخبرتني أن فيصل في المستشفى. بعد أن غادرت البيت، خرج على دراجته الهوائية دون أن يخبرها. وصدمة سيارة، كان فاقد الوعي وكسر رسغه. كانت والدتي تبكي.

The El Fayed's drove me straight to the hospital. My parents were there already. Faisal was still unconscious and he looked very white. There was some blood on his forehead and a big cut on his cheek. The doctor told me that my brother was going to be OK, but I felt terrible. My first words to my mum were, I wish I'd taken him to the park. I wish I hadn't been so selfish. If only I had listened to you, Mum. □

أقلتني عائلة الفايد مباشرة إلى المستشفى. كان والدي هناك. كان فيصل لا يزال فاقدًا للوعي وبدي شاحباً جداً. كانت توجد بعض الدماء على جبينه وجرح كبير على خده. أخبرني الطبيب أن أخي سيكون بخير، لكنني شعرت بانزعاج. كانت كلماتي الأولى لأمي. أتمنى لو كنت قد أخذته إلى المتنزه. أتمنى لو أنني لم أكن أنانية. لو أنني فقط أصفيت لك يا أمي.

Faisal was unconscious for three days. We were all sick with worry for those three days, but in the end everything was OK. On the fourth day he woke up and asked for ice-cream sweets and lemonade. Everyone laughed and the doctors said he could come home. Layla came to see him a few days later at home. Although his broken wrist was in a plaster cast he still managed to pull her hair.

كان فيصل فاقدًا للوعي لمدة ثلاثة أيام. لم تكن بحال جيد جميعاً وكنا قلقين لأيام الثلاثة تلك. ولكن في النهاية كان كل شيء على مايرام. في اليوم الرابع، استفاق من الغيبوبة وطلب مثلجات، حلويات وعصير ليمون. الجميع ضحك وقال الأطباء أن باستطاعته الذهاب للبيت. جاءت ليلى لتراه بعد عدة أيام في البيت، رغم أن رسغه المكسور كان في جبيرة الجص لكنه لا يزال يقوم بشد شعرها !

1- Dana didn't take her brother to the park because... لم تأخذ دانا أخيها إلى الشاطئ بسبب

a) he had told her a lie.

b) he had to go for a bike ride.

c) she wanted to get away from her family for the day. أرادت أن تبتعد عن عائلتها ليوم.

2- Dana thinks the accident was... تعتقد دانا أن الحادث كان

a) her brother's fault.

b) her fault. بسبب خطأ منها

c) Layla's fault.



★ Complete the rule and the examples with these words: been, taken, listened, past. أكمل القاعدة والأمثلة بهذه الكلمات.

### التحسر/الندم Regrets

To express regret, use

(I wish or If only + the past perfect tense)

(لاظهار ندم، استخدم: (صيغة الماضي التام + I wish or If only) ( → )

- I wish I had listened to my mother.
- I wish I hadn't been so selfish.
- If only I had taken my brother with me.

**Regrets:** تحسر/ندم

### الشكل - Form

\* استخدم (ماضي تام + I wish → )، مثل:

- I wish I hadn't been so selfish.
- She wishes she had worked harder for her exams.

### الاستخدام - Use

\* الندم (regrets) هي تمنيات عن الماضي، مثل:

- I wish I had gone to Egypt last year. (اتمنى لو كنت قد ذهبت الى مصر العام الماضي)

### Activity Book-Lesson 9

A- Read the article on Student's Book pages 64 and 65 again and match the words and phrases to their meanings.

اقرأ المقالة على الصفحتين ٦٤/٦٥ من كتاب الطالب ثم صل الكلمات والعبارات الى معانيها.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 1- picnic            | = [e] meal outside. نزهة                  |
| 2- annoying          | = [b] difficult, causing trouble. ازعاج   |
| 3- chat              | = [i] talk in a friendly way. حديث ودي    |
| 4- room (in the car) | = [d] space. مكان                         |
| 5- argue             | = [c] disagree; fight with words. يجادل   |
| 6- to start with     | = [a] at the beginning. في البداية        |
| 7- for ages          | = [j] for a long time. لوقت طويل          |
| 8- breeze            | = [f] gentle wind. نسيم                   |
| 9- unconscious       | = [g] not awake. فاقد الوعي               |
| 10- selfish          | = [h] only thinking about yourself. اناني |





**B- Answer these questions** اجب على هذه الاسئلة .**1- In which two ways does Faisal sometimes annoy Dana and Layla?**

بأي وسيلتين يزعج فيصل أحياناً دانا وليلى؟

**A:** He pulls Layla's long hair and he wants the girls to play football with him when they want to talk to each other.**2- What food and drink did Dana take with her for the picnic?**

ماهو الطعام والشراب الذي أخذته دانا معها للنزهة؟

**A:** She baked two cakes for the picnic and she took fruit and lemonade.**3- What lie did Dana tell her mother?** ماهي الكذبة التي أخبرت دانا بها والدتها؟**A:** Dana told her mother that there wouldn't be space in the car for Faisal, but she didn't know if this was true.**4- How did Dana find out about Faisal's accident?** كيف عرفت دانا عن حادثة فيصل؟**A:** Dana's mother phoned her.**5- How did the accident happen?** كيف حصلت الحادثة؟**A:** He had gone out on his bike and a car had hit him.**6- How did Dana feel when she saw her brother in hospital?**

كيف شعرت دانا عندما شاهدت أخيها في المستشفى؟

**A:** She felt extremely sorry.**7- What did she wish?** ماذا تمنّت؟**A:** She wished she hadn't been so selfish and had taken Faisal on the park.**8- How did everyone know Faisal was better on the fourth day?**

كيف عرف كل شخص ان فيصل كان بحال أفضل في اليوم الرابع؟

**A:** They knew he was better because he wanted ice-cream, sweets and lemonade.**C- Write a summary of the story in your own words. Start like this and complete the sentence beginnings**

اكتب ملخصاً للقصة بكلماتك. ابدأ مثل هذا ثم أكمل بدايات الجمل.

Dana was invited to the park for a picnic by Layla and her family. Her brother Faisal wanted to go too, but Dana didn't want him to. She told her mother that there wouldn't be room in Layla's car for Faisal, but she didn't know if this was true. At the park, Dana had lots of fun with Layla. Then she got a call from her mother. Faisal had had an accident and was in hospital. Layla's family drove Dana to the hospital. Faisal was unconscious. Dana felt terrible. She wished she hadn't been so selfish. In the end, Faisal woke up on the fourth day and came home a few days later. He was fine.



## Activity Book-Lesson 10

**A- Read the letter of complaint on page 120 and write the following phrases and sentences in the correct places.**

أقرأ رسالة الشكوى على صفحة (١٢٠) ثم أكتب العبارات والجمل التالية في الأماكن الصحيحة.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| - and had a view of a car park               | - and the unbearable noise           |
| - and there was no hot water in the mornings | - photos which show                  |
| - and we could not keep our food fresh       | - and we were unable to relax        |
| - but we left after one week                 | - I look forward to hearing from you |

24 Park Street  
London  
W6 9DG

The Managing Director  
Cornwall Beach Holidays  
12 The High Street  
Truro  
TR22OPW

17<sup>th</sup> August

Dear Sir/Madam,

My brother and I stayed at one of your holiday flats last month, from 15 to 22 July.

It was Flat 25, Bay View Road, Penzance. We intended to stay there for two weeks, until 29 July, ① but we left after one week. There were a number of reasons for our early departure. Firstly, we had booked a flat with a view of the sea. The flat which you gave us was at the back of the building ② and had a view of a car park. Secondly, the bathroom was unsatisfactory. The shower did not work ③ and there was no hot water in the mornings. I complained to the caretaker, but nobody did anything about it. Thirdly, the television did not work. I asked the caretaker to replace it, but he did not. In addition, the fridge did not work. This was very inconvenient as the weather was very hot ④ and we could not keep our food fresh. Finally, there were builders working the whole time that we were there. They were working above the flat from seven in the morning until ten at night. The noise and dust were terrible ⑤ and we were unable to relax. As you know, we paid £600 in advance for our two-week stay and left after just one week. We could not stay any longer because the flat was so unsatisfactory. I would not have booked a two-week stay at the flat if I had known about the building works ⑥ and the unbearable noise. I would therefore be grateful if you could refund £300 to me for the week that we were not there. I enclose ⑦ photos which show the unattractive view from the flat and the building works. ⑧ I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,  
Mike Green



**B- Put Mike's five complaints in the order he mentions them. Write the numbers 1 to 5 in the boxes.**

ضع شكاوي مايك الخمسة التي ذكرها بالترتيب. أكتب الأرقام من ١ إلى ٥ داخل الصناديق.

**Answers:** a) the bathroom [2] b) the builders [5] c) the fridge [4]  
d) the TV [3] e) the view [1]

**C- Answer the questions.** أجب على الأسئلة.

- 1- Who lives in Park Street, London?  
- The writer/Mike Green lives there.
- 2- Who is the letter to?  
- The letter is to the Managing Director of Cornwall Beach Holidays.
- 3- Why does Mike Green start the letter with Dear Sir / Madam?  
- Because he doesn't know who the Managing Director is or whether it is a man or a woman.
- 4- A formal letter ends with Yours faithfully. Write one way to end an informal letter.  
- Ways of ending an informal letter: Love from, Best wishes, Lots of love, Yours.

**D- Tick the correct item for a formal letter from each list below.**

أشرف الفقرات الصحيحة لرسالة رسمية من كل قائمة في أدناه.

**Answers:**

1- Opening greeting: تحية البداية

a- Dear Mr Sir, **b- Dear Mr Moreton,** c- Hello Sir d- My dearest Sir,

2- Closing greeting: تحية الختام

a- Love from b- Best wishes c- Goodbye **d- Yours sincerely**

(ونحن نستخدم عبارة "Yours faithfully" عندما نعرف اسم الشخص الذي نكتب له)

3- Address: عنوان

a- King Street 14 London W6 4EJ b- London, England c- **14 King Street London W6 4EJ**

التسلسل الانكليزي للعنوان هو: الشارع، المدينة، الرقم البريدي

4- Date: تاريخ (in ordinal numbers)

**a- 11<sup>th</sup> November / November 11<sup>th</sup>** b- November the 11<sup>th</sup>  
c- the eleventh of November d- 11 November

**E- Write a formal letter of complaint.** أكتب رسالة شكوى رسمية.

You are studying in Britain. You live in a furnished, rented flat. You are not satisfied with certain things in the flat. Write to the landlord of your flat, Mr Mathews. Complain about five things from the list below. List your complaints in order of importance. Lay your letter out with your address, the landlord's address and the date. Your letter should be about 150 words, NOT INCLUDING the addresses, greetings or date.



أنت تدرس في بريطانيا. تسكن في شقة مؤجرة ومؤثثة. أنت غير مقتنع بأشياء في الشقة. أكتب الى مالك شقتك، السيد ماثيوس، تشتكي عن خمسة أشياء من القائمة في أدناه. ضع قائمة شكاواك بنظام حسب الأهمية. خطط رسالتك بعنوانك، عنوان مالك الشقة والتاريخ. رسالتك يجب أن تكون بحوالي ١٥٠ كلمة من دون العناوين، التحيات والتاريخ.

- \* *there are cockroaches in the kitchen* توجد صراصير في المطبخ
- \* *the lift often breaks down* المصعد غالباً عاطل
- \* *the central heating does not work* التدفئة المركزية لا تعمل
- \* *there have been power cuts every month* الطاقة تنقطع كل شهر
- \* *you need another chair* تحتاج الى كرسي آخر
- \* *the neighbours are very noisy* الجيران مزعجون جداً
- \* *the roof is leaking and water is coming into your bedroom* ينضج السقف ماءً ويجري الى داخل غرفتك
- \* *the bathroom window is broken* شبلك الحمام مكسور

**Answer:**

Hassan Ahmed  
8 Hayes St.  
San Rafael,  
London CA 94901  
November 22<sup>nd</sup>, 2013

Mr Mathews  
123 Sunny Lane  
San Rafael,  
CA 94901  
London,

Dear Mr Mathews,

I am the tenant for Apartment 320 in the Highland Oaks apartment complex. I signed my lease 3 months ago in August. I looked at several other apartments, but chose this one because of the location and the fact that you have a storm shelter.

However, recently, I have been disappointed in my choice. I have some problems in the apartment as shown below:

1. I am unhappy with the level of noise from neighbors in apartment 310. This usually happens on Friday, Saturday and Sunday evenings and afternoons. They will play their music extremely loud, and occasionally scream and yell.
2. The roof is leaking and water is coming into my bedroom.
3. The central heating does not work.
4. The bathroom window is broken.
5. The lift often breaks down.

If you fail to solve these problems, I will have no choice but to contact the Better Business Bureau. I will also seek legal counsel about breaking my lease due to insufficient repairs.

You may contact me regarding this matter. Please solve these problems immediately. Thank you.

Sincerely,  
Hassan Ahmed



**Activity Book- Revision 1**

**A- Read the article quickly. Don't worry about the words you don't understand. Just get the general meaning. Then choose the best headline for it.**

اقرأ المقالة بسرعة. لا تقلق من الكلمات التي لا تفهمها. فقط احصل على المعنى العام. ثم اختر أفضل عنوان لها. (قطعة مهمة)

- 1- Do sport and lose weight!
- 2- SPORT HELPS YOU SLEEP BETTER!
- 3- Teachers say sport is important.
- 4- SPORTY PEOPLE DON'T FIGHT OR ARGUE
- 5- SPORT IS DEFINITELY GOOD FOR YOU! الرياضة هي قطعاً جيدة لك!
- 6- Endorphins Make You Feel Good

Medical research shows that there are many advantages in doing sport two or three times a week. According to most **doctors**, sport and aerobic exercise improve stamina, strength and flexibility and make us feel better. When we get out of breath, doctors say, our heart gets useful exercise, and over a period of time, this exercise makes our heart and lungs stronger. On top of this, during exercise the brain releases special chemicals called endorphins. These chemicals can improve our mood, give us a sense of well-being and even make us feel happier. As a result, according to many doctors, after exercise we are likely to feel relaxed and sleep better. Doctors also say that doing sport helps overweight people to lose weight and, in some cases, motivates smokers to give up smoking.

**Psychologists** talk about the personal and social benefits that come from doing sport regularly. They say that people who do sport get rid of aggression and are more balanced. They do not get angry as often as people who do not do sport and they are less likely to have fights or unnecessary arguments. They also talk about the benefits of being part of a team. People who participate in team sports learn how to work with and appreciate others and learn to recognize their own strengths and weaknesses. They also receive praise and support from other members of their team. So, according to psychologists, people who do sport are often less isolated than those who don't. They say they have more friends, are more popular and receive more social invitations.

يظهر البحث الطبي وجود العديد من الفوائد في ممارسة الرياضة مرتين أو ثلاثاً في الأسبوع. وفقاً إلى أغلب الأطباء، فإن ممارسة الرياضة والتمارين البدنية تحسن قوة التحمل، قوة ومرونة الجسم وتجعلنا أن نشعر بحال أفضل. عندما نكون نلهث (منقطعاً الانفاس)، يقول الأطباء، أن قلبنا يحصل على تمرين مفيد، وخلال مدة من الزمن هذا التمرين يجعل من قلوبنا وراثتنا أن تكون أقوى. في مقدمة هذا، خلال التمرين يطلق الدماغ مواد كيميائية خاصة تسمى (endorphins). يمكن لهذه المواد الكيميائية أن تحسن مزاجنا، تعطينا احساس بالحال الجيد وحتى تجعلنا أن نشعر بسعادة أكثر. نتيجة ذلك، ووفقاً إلى العديد من الأطباء، فإننا بعد التمرين من المرجح أن نشعر بالاسترخاء وننام بشكل أفضل. يقول الأطباء أيضاً أن ممارسة الرياضة تساعد الناس البدنيين أن يفقدوا من وزنهم. وفي بعض الحالات، يحث المدخنين أن يقلعوا عن التدخين.

علماء النفس يتحدثون عن فوائد شخصية واجتماعية تأتي من ممارسة الرياضة بانتظام. انهم يقولون أن الأشخاص الذين يمارسون الرياضة يتخلصون من العدوانية ويكونون أكثر اتزاناً. انهم لا يغضبون مثل أغلب الناس الذين لا يمارسون الرياضة ويكونون أقل احتمالاً لأن يدخلوا في شجارات أو جدالات غير ضرورية. انهم أيضاً يتحدثون عن فوائد أن تكون جزءاً من فريق. الأشخاص الذين يشاركون في فريق رياضي يتعلمون كيف يعملون مع ويتقنون الآخرين ويتعلمون أن يميزوا قوتهم وضعفهم. انهم أيضاً يتلقون المديح والاسناد من بقية أعضاء فريقهم. لهذا، ووفقاً لعلماء النفس، فإن الأشخاص الذين يمارسون الرياضة يكونون غالباً أقل انعزالاً عن أولئك الذين لا يمارسونها. انهم يقولون أن لديهم أصدقاء أكثر، ويكونون أكثر شهرة ويتلقون دعوات اجتماعية أكثر.



In a recent survey, 96% of **teachers** said that students who regularly did sport were harder working, more motivated, more interested in their studies and better disciplined than those who did not do sport regularly. A similar survey among **employers** gave similar results. Employers said that their employees who did sport were more energetic, more productive and less likely to take time off work for illness.

The message is clear. **Governments** should do more to encourage sport throughout the population. They should spend more money on sports facilities for young people in primary and secondary schools, colleges and universities. They should offer sports programmes to adults of all ages. There should be more sports clubs, gyms, tennis courts, swimming pools and playing fields at prices that everyone can afford. And sports coaching should be more easily available. Sport can improve people's health and attitude to life. A healthy, happy population makes for a productive and prosperous country.

في مسح حديث، فإن ٩٦٪ من المدرسين يقولون ان الطلاب الذين يمارسون الرياضة بانتظام كانوا يبذلون أكثر جهداً دراسياً، أكثر اندفاعاً، أكثر استمتاعاً في دراساتهم ومنتظمين بشكل أفضل من أولئك الذين لا يمارسون الرياضة بانتظام. مسح مشابه أجري بين أصحاب العمل أعطت نتائج مشابهة. قال أصحاب العمل أن المستخدمين لديهم الذين مارسوا الرياضة كانوا أكثر نشاطاً، أكثر إنتاجاً وأقل احتمالاً لأخذ إجازات من العمل بسبب المرض.

الرسالة واضحة. على الحكومات فعل الكثير للتشجيع على الرياضة بين السكان. عليهم صرف أموال أكثر على المنشآت الرياضية للأحداث في المدارس الابتدائية، الثانوية، الكليات والجامعات. يجب أن يقدموا البرامج الرياضية إلى البالغين لجميع الأعمار. يجب أن تتوفر نواد رياضية أكثر، نوادي رياضة بدنية، ملاعب تنس، أحواض سباحة، ملاعب بأسعار يمكن لأي شخص استخدامها. والتدريب الرياضي يجب أن يكون متاحاً بسهولة. يمكن للرياضة أن تحسن من صحة الناس وموقفهم إلى الحياة. السكان الذين يعيشون بصحة وسعادة ينشؤون بلداً منتجا ومزدهرا.

### Answer:

5) Sport Is Definitely Good For You! الرياضة هي قطعاً جيدة لك!

B- These are the main points of the article in the wrong order. Put them in the same order as in the article. Number them 1 to 5.

هذه نقاط رئيسية للمقالة بترتيب خاطئ. ضعها بنفس الترتيب كما هي في المقالة، رقمها من (١-٥).

- a- **Employers** say the same about their staff. [4]
- b- **The government** should encourage sport more actively. [5]
- c- **Doctors** say sport has many health benefits. [1]
- d- **Teachers** find sporty students work harder. [3]
- e- **Psychologists** agree that sport is good for us. [2]

اطلب النسخة الاصلية من مكتب الشمس حصراً

موبايل / ٠٧٨٠٥٠٣٠٩٤٢ / ٠٧٩٠١٧٥٣٤٦١



★ Write a paragraph about "Sports helps you sleep well". Write about 80-100 words.

أكتب مقطعاً عن "تساعدك الرياضة على النوم جيداً". أكتب (٨٠ - ١٠٠) كلمة. (الانشاء مطلوب في الامتحانات)

### Sports helps you sleep well

Sports are one of the most important things that human have to do, because they provide a healthy life, besides many other things.

There are many benefits in doing sports two or three times a week. Firstly they help in the mental and physical growth. They also help us feel relaxed and sleep better. They help overweight people to lose weight and, in some cases, motivate smokers to give up smoking. Moreover they remove tiredness and aggression, they shape the body and make it strong and active. On the other hand, people who do sports are often less isolated than others, they have more friends and more popular.

In the conclusion, governments should do more to encourage sport through the population and spend more money on sports facilities.

### تساعدك الرياضة على النوم جيداً

الرياضة هي واحدة من أكثر الأمور أهمية التي على الانسان ممارستها، لأنها تزوده بالحياة الصحية، الى جانب العديد من الأشياء الأخرى. توجد الكثير من الفوائد في ممارسة الرياضة لمرتين أو ثلاث مرات اسبوعياً. أولاً انها تساعد في النمو العقلي والجسدي. انها أيضاً تساعدنا لنشعر بالاسترخاء، والنوم بشكل أفضل. انها تساعد الأشخاص ذوي الوزن الزائد لفقدان الوزن، وفي بعض الحالات، تشجع المدخنين على التخلي عن التدخين. علاوة على ان الرياضة تزيل التعب والسلوك العدواني، انها تشكل الجسم وتجعله قوياً ونشطاً. من جانب آخر، فان الأشخاص الذين يمارسون الرياضة يكونون غالباً أقل عزلة من غيرهم، حيث يكون لهم أصدقاء وشعبية أكثر. على الحكومات العمل أكثر للتشجيع على الرياضة بين السكان وصرف أموال أكثر على المنشآت الرياضية.

## Activity Book-Revision 2

A- Write five words from the list in each category.

اكتب خمس كلمات من القائمة في كل صنف.

boiled	carrots	ankle	salty	chilli	chips	delicious
face	forehead	fried	grilled	heated	honey	wrist
lemonade	spicy	stewed	sweet	tasteless	knee	

ways food is cooked (طرق طبخ الطعام)	adjectives to describe food (صفات لوصف الطعام)	things to eat or drink (أشياء للأكل أو الشرب)	parts of the body (أجزاء الجسم)
boiled مسلوق	salty مالح	carrots جزر	ankle كاحل
fried مقلي	delicious لذيذ	chilli فلفل حار	face وجه
grilled مشوي	spicy متبل	chips بطاطا	forehead جبين
heated ساخن	sweet حلو	honey عسل	wrist رسغ / معصم
stewed مطهو	tasteless بلا طعم	lemonade عصير ليمون	knee ركبة



**B- Match each word on the left with a word on the right to make common phrases.** صل كل كلمة من اليسار مع كلمة من اليمين لتكوين عبارات شائعة.

1- salt and <u>pepper</u> drink	4- knife and <u>fork</u> tie
2- fish and <u>chips</u> pepper	5- suit and <u>tie</u> chips
3- food and <u>drink</u> fork	6- hopes and <u>dreams</u> dreams

**C- Match the words to make compound nouns** صل الكلمات لتكوين أسماء مركبة

1- air- <u>conditioning</u> bike	4- cheese <u>grater</u> grater
2- driving <u>licence</u> camera	5- electric <u>mixer</u> facilities
3- digital <u>camera</u> conditioning	6- mountain <u>bike</u> licence
	7- sports <u>facilities</u> mixer

**D- Find the pairs of words that are linked to each other by their meaning.** جد الكلمتان الشائيتان المرتبطة مع بعضها بالمعنى.

athletics	cut	boiling	onion	camp	champion
faint	barbecue	hairdresser	hot	starving	salon
hungry	tent	unconscious	blood	charcoal	garlic

- 1- athletics/champion
- 2- cut/blood
- 3- boiling/hot
- 4- onion/garlic
- 5- camp/tent
- 6- faint/unconscious
- 7- barbecue/charcoal
- 8- hairdresser/salon
- 9- starving/hungry

### Activity Book-Test 1

**A- Listen and make notes of the reasons the girls lost the basketball match. There are five more reasons.**

أستمع وكون ملاحظات عن اسباب خسارة البنات لمباراة كرة السلة.

**Carol:** How was the basketball match, Farida?

**Farida:** Terrible Carol. We lost.

**Carol:** You lost against Kent College?

**Farida:** Yes. And I think I know why.

**Carol:** So, why did you lose?

**Farida:** I think the main reason is that we changed our captain just two days before the match.

**Carol:** Really? And what else?



**Farida:** Well, in my opinion, the second reason is this. We didn't train hard enough in the week before the game.

**Carol:** Mm, yes. Training right up to a match is terribly important.

**Farida:** And on top of that, we had a big party the night before the game.

**Carol:** A party the night before! Why?

**Farida:** I don't know. It was a very bad idea, in my view. We had a big party and went to bed late the night before the match.

**Carol:** Crazy! And I heard that Jenny had a problem with her knee as well. Is that true?

**Farida:** Yes, that's right, Carol. Jenny hurt her knee, so she couldn't play. And Jenny is usually one of our best players, you know.

**Carol:** How did Layla play?

**Farida:** Well, I'm afraid she didn't pass the ball.

**Carol:** She didn't pass the ball?

**Farida:** No, she didn't.

**Carol:** That's ridiculous.

**Farida:** I agree. But that's not the only thing. Helen fell over during the game.

**Carol:** She fell over? I don't believe it!

**Farida:** Yes, she did. Helen fell over during the game.

**Carol:** Well I can see why you didn't win, You really did have a lot of problems.

**Farida:** Yes, we did, Carol. If only we hadn't changed captains! And if only we had trained...

**Carol:** If, if, if ... I tell you what, Farida. Just forget about the match. I'm sure you'll do better next time.

- 1- changed captain two days before match.
- 2- didn't train hard enough in the week before game.
- 3- had a party night before.
- 4- Jenny/best player had knee problem.
- 5- Layla didn't pass the ball.
- 6- Helen fell over.



**B- Use the notes to write sentences like the example expressing regret.**

أستخدم الملاحظات لكتابة جمل مثل المثال الذي يقدم ندم/تحسر.

- 1- **If only** we hadn't changed captain two days before the match.
- 2- **If only** we had trained hard in the week before the game.
- 3- **If only** we hadn't had a party the night before.
- 4- **If only** Jenny, our best player hadn't had a knee problem.
- 5- **If only** Layla had passed the ball.
- 6- **If only** Helen hadn't fallen over.

**C- Complete the sentences with words from the box.** أكمل الجمل بكلمات من الصندوق.

boil	bowl	fry	charcoal	heat
sink	slice	starving	sweet	tasteless

- 1- This stew is a bit **tasteless**. Can you pass me the salt, please?
- 2- I'm **starving**. When are we going to have lunch?
- 3- We can't have a barbecue. There isn't any **charcoal**.
- 4- Can you **boil** some water and make the tea, please?
- 5- The rice isn't very hot. Let me **heat** it a bit for you in the microwave.
- 6- Sit down and I'll bring you a nice **bowl** of soup.
- 7- Where's the olive oil? I'm going to **fry** some potatoes for lunch.
- 8- There's lots of honey in this cake. That's why it's so **sweet**.
- 9- Would you like a **slice** of cake with your coffee?
- 10- Can you take these dirty dishes to the **sink** and wash them up, please?

**D- Circle the correct words to complete the sentences.**

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة لإكمال الجمل

- 1- The river is very fast and dangerous. The sign says you **must** not swim in it.  
 a- **must**                      b- should                      c- might
- 2- I wish I **hadn't said** that to her. Now she hates me.  
 a- **hadn't said**                      b- didn't say                      c- don't say
- 3- You **don't have to** do your homework tonight. It's the weekend tomorrow.  
 a- mustn't                      b- **don't have to**                      c- can't



- 4- We **had to** write about our favourite food for homework yesterday.  
a- have to                      b- had                      **c- had to**
- 5- If you **could** change your life, how would you change it?  
a- can                      **b- could**                      c- will
- 6- There's a bad smell in the kitchen. **You'd better** empty the rubbish bin.  
**a- You'd better**                      b- You better                      c- Better you
- 7- What **would you** buy first if your father gave you 2 million Iraqi dinars?  
a- do you                      b- will you                      **c- would you**
- 8- My brother works for the police, but he **doesn't have to** wear a uniform.  
a- don't have to                      **b- doesn't have to**                      c- doesn't have
- 9- If you don't feel well, I think you **should** go and lie down.  
a- will                      b- need                      **c- should**
- 10- I wish I **spoke** lots of languages. Then I could be an interpreter.  
**a- spoke**                      b- speaking                      c- speak

### E- Write sentences in the second conditional. اكتب جملًا بالعادة الشرطية الثانية.

- 1- I (give) you some money if I (have) any.  
- I'd/I would give you some money if I had any.
- 2- If I (be) you, I (not lend) him your bike.  
- If I were you, I would not/wouldn't lend him your bike.
- 3- Where (you go) if you (can) have lots of free plane tickets?  
- Where would you go if you could have lots of free plane tickets?
- 4- If you (wake up) and (not remember) your own name, what (you do)?  
- If you woke up and didn't/did not/couldn't/could not remember your own name, what would you do?
- 5- If she (live) nearer, I (see) her every day.  
- If she lived nearer, I'd/I would see her every day.

### F- Match the sentence beginnings and endings. Then write full sentences, putting the verbs in the correct tense.

صل بدايات الجمل ونهاياتها. ثم اكتب الجمل كاملة. ضع الافعال بالصيغة الصحيحة.

- 1- [ e ] Do you wish you (be) still                      a- house.  
2- [ d ] I wish I (know)                      b- drive.  
3- [ b ] My grandmother wishes she (can)                      c- near the sea.  
4- [ f ] Salwa wishes she (not have to) wear                      d- her name.  
5- [ a ] They wish they (have) a bigger                      e- on holiday?



6- [ c ] Halim wishes he (live)

f- glasses.

1- Do you wish you were still on holiday?

2- I wish I **knew** her name.

3- My grandmother wishes she **could** drive.

4- Salwa wishes she **did not have to** wear glasses.

5- They wish they **had** a bigger house.

6- Halim wishes he **lived** near the sea.

## Activity Book-Test 2

A- Read the article on page 129 quickly and choose the correct headline for it. Tick your choice. ( قطعة مهمة في الامتحانات )

اقرأ المقالة على صفحة ( ١٢٩ ) بسرعة ثم اختر العنوان الصحيح لها. أشر اختيارك.

**Avoid fast food and save the environment**

**Fast food contains too much salt and sugar!**

**Fast food can make you FAT!**

**THE TROUBLE WITH FAST FOOD** المشاكل مع الوجبات السريعة

**FAST FOOD is BAD for your family life**

**WHY TEENAGERS LOVE FAST FOOD**

Ask any British teenager about their favourite food and they will probably say one of these: fish and chips, pizza, burgers, kebabs, hot dogs or Mexican tacos. What do these things have in common? They are all fast food. That means food from shops or stalls that only sell one or two kinds of food, which is served very fast, and which doesn't cost a lot. In fact, 80% of British teenagers eat fast food at least once a week.

Why do they like it so much?

'I like to go out with my friends at the weekends. We go to the cinema and the shops and then we get hungry,' says Damian, aged seventeen from Brighton. 'We can't afford restaurants and, anyway, they're too formal for us. Fast food is cheap and you don't have to be smartly dressed to go and buy a portion of fish and chips'.

Adam, eighteen from Newcastle, says he eats fish and chips at least once a week.

'My brother and I always go swimming on Wednesday evening. Afterwards, we're tired and hungry, so we get fish and chips from a shop opposite the pool. It's quick and convenient. You don't have

اسأل أي مراهق بريطاني عن طعامهم المفضل وأنهم ربما سيقولون احدي هذه الأطعمة: سمك وبطاطا، بيتزا، همبرغر، كباب، نقانق أو تاكو. بماذا تشترك هذه الأطعمة؟ انها جميعا أطعمة سريعة التحضير. ذلك يعني ان الطعام من المحلات أو الاكشاك التي تبيع فقط نوع أو نوعين من الطعام، هم الذين يقدمون الطعام بشكل سريع جدا ورخيص. في الحقيقة، ان ٨٠٪ من المراهقين البريطانيين يأكلون الوجبات السريعة على الأقل مرة في الاسبوع.

لماذا هم يحبونها كثيرا جدا؟

أنا أحب أن أخرج مع أصدقائي في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع. نذهب الى السينما والى المحلات ونتمتع. يقول داميان، عمره سبعة عشر من مدينة برايتون. 'لا نستطيع تحمل نفقات المطاعم وعلى أية حال المطاعم تكون رسمية جدا بالنسبة لنا. وجبات الطعام السريعة تكون رخيصة وليس عليك أن تكون أنيق الملابس لتذهب وتشتري وجبة سمك وبطاطا.'

أدم، عمره ثمانية عشر من مدينة نيوكاسل، يقول انه يأكل السمك والبطاطا على الأقل مرة في الاسبوع. أنا وأخي دائما نذهب للسباحة يوم الاربعاء مساء. بعدئذ، نكون متعبين وجائعين، لهذا نحصل على السمك والبطاطا من محل مقابل المسبح. انه سريع ومناسب. ليس عليك الانتظار. أنت تحصل على وجبة



to wait. You get a hot meal in five minutes. And we eat them on the way home in the bus. The chips are a bit oily, but when you're hungry, that's OK'.

There's no question that fast food is convenient and cheap, but many doctors and scientists think that it is unhealthy. In Europe and America today, 22% of children and teenagers are overweight.

**Doctors** say that fast food is the problem. They claim it contains too much fat and too much oil. It also contains too much salt, which makes people thirsty. This leads to another problem. The soft drinks like lemonade, orangeade and cola which are sold with fast food contain too much sugar. The result is that young people fill themselves with sugar, oil and fat, very little carbohydrate and protein, and no vegetables or fruit.

**Psychologists** say that fast food can be bad for family life. They say that families suffer when teenagers are never at home at mealtimes. They say that families need to spend time together enjoying a meal. Mealtimes are the time when the whole family has the opportunity to get together and talk about the events of the day.

**Environmentalists** complain about fast food's bad effects on the environment. It comes with plastic knives and forks, plastic cups and bottles and polystyrene or paper boxes. Many people throw these away without thinking and leave rubbish in the streets. On top of that, burning them causes extra pollution to the atmosphere.

However, it is clear that fast food is not going to go away. How can we reduce the negative aspects of it? Firstly, for health reasons, we shouldn't always eat the same fast food. Even if burgers and chips are your favourites, you shouldn't always eat them. Have something different for a change sometimes. You should avoid sweet drinks with your fast food. Drink water instead. You should make sure you have a meal with the whole family at least four times a week. For the sake of the environment, avoid buying fast food that has a lot of polystyrene or plastic wrapping. And always make sure you throw your fast food wrappings and cups in a rubbish bin.

حارة خلال خمس دقائق. نحن نأكلها في طريقنا للبيت ونحن في الباص. البطاطا تكون مشبعة بالدهن قليلا، لكنك عندما تكون جوعان، فإنها لا بأس بها.

بلا شك ان الوجبات السريعة تكون مناسبة ورخيصة، لكن العديد من الأطباء والعلماء يعتقدون بأنها غير صحية. اليوم، في أوروبا وأمريكا، فإن ٢٢٪ من الأولاد والمراهقين هم بدينون. يقول الأطباء ان وجبات الطعام السريعة هي المشكلة. انهم يدعون بأنها تحتوي على الدهن والزيت كثيرا جدا. انها أيضا تحتوي على الكثير جدا من الملح. التي تعطش الناس. يقود هذا الى مشكلة أخرى. المشروبات مثل عصير الليمون، عصير البرتقال والكمون التي تباع مع الوجبات السريعة فإنها تحتوي على الكثير جدا من السكر. النتيجة هو ان الشباب يملئون أنفسهم بالسكر، الزيت، الدهون والقليل جدا من الكربوهيدرات والبروتين، ولا يأكلون الخضروات أو الفاكهة.

يقول علماء النفس ان الوجبات السريعة يمكن أن تكون سيئة لحياة العائلة. انهم يقولون ان العوائل تعاني عندما لا يكون أولادهم في البيت أثناء وجبات الطعام. انهم يقولون ان العوائل تحتاج لان تقضي أوقاتا سوية وهم يستمتعون بتناول وجبة الطعام. أوقات وجبات الطعام هي الفرصة للعائلة لان يجتمعوا سوية ويتحدثوا عن أحداث اليوم.

يشكو علماء البيئة من التأثيرات السيئة للوجبات السريعة على البيئة. ان ذلك يأتي من السكاكين والشوكات والأكواب البلاستيكية والقناني والصناديق المصنوعة من البوليسترين أو الورق. العديد من الناس يرمونها دون أن يفكروا ويتركون النفايات في الشوارع. وعلى رأس ذلك، فإن حرقها يسبب تلوث اضافي الى الغلاف الجوي للأرض.

على أية حال، من الواضح ان الوجبات السريعة سوف لن تختفي. كيف يمكننا أن نقلل من المظاهر السلبية لها؟ أولا، لأسباب صحية، علينا أن لا نأكل دائما نفس الوجبة السريعة. حتى ان كان الهمبرغر والبطاطا هما المفضلة لك، ليس عليك دائما أن تأكلها. كل شيئا مختلفا للتغيير أحيانا. عليك تجنب المشروبات السكرية مع الوجبة السريعة. اشرب الماء بدلا عنه. تأكد انه عليك أن تتناول وجبة مع جميع عائلتك على الأقل اربعة مرات في الاسبوع. من أجل البيئة، تجنب شراء الوجبات السريعة التي فيها الكثير من الأغلفة المصنوعة من البوليسترين أو البلاستيك. وتأكد دائما أن ترمي أغلفة الوجبات السريعة والأكواب في وعاء النفايات.

**Answer:** The Trouble With Fast Food



## B- Read and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

أقرأ ثم اشر الجمل بـ صح (T) أو خطأ (F).

- 1- You don't have to sit in a restaurant to eat fast food. **T**
- 2- Most British teenagers eat fast food every week. **T**
- 3- Damian likes dressing up and going to expensive restaurants. **F**
- 4- Damian says fast food is cheap. **T**
- 5- Adam doesn't like fish and chips because they're too oily. **F**
- 6- Adam hates waiting for the fish and chips to be cooked. **F**
- 7- According to doctors, a lot of fast food is bad for people's health. **T**
- 8- Psychologists think fast food makes life better for everyone. **F**
- 9- The writer thinks we shouldn't eat too much of the same fast food. **T**

## C- These are the main points of the article in the wrong order. Put them in the same order as in the article. Number them 1 to 6.

هذه النقاط الرئيسية للمقالة وضعت بترتيب خاطئ. ضعها بنفس الترتيب كما في المقالة. رقمها من ١ إلى ٦.

- Doctors think it is bad for young people's health. **3**
- Fast food is very popular among British teenagers. **1**
- Psychologists say family life benefits from mealtimes together. **4**
- There are complaints about the bad effects of fast food on the environment. **5**
- There are ways we can reduce all the bad effects of fast food. **6**
- Young people like it because it is cheap and convenient. **2**

## ★ Write a paragraph about "Fast Food". Write about (80-100) words.

أكتب مقطعا عن طعام الوجبات السريعة. أكتب من (٨٠-١٠٠) كلمة. (الانشاء مطلوب في الامتحانات).

**Fast Food**

Fast food is one of the easiest and cheapest ways of eating. It saves a lot of time and money, especially for people who are coming home from work. However, it is the worst enemy of human health these days. It has many negative aspects on humans. One of these negative aspects is that it contains too much fat, oil and salt, which make people overweight and thirsty. It can also be bad for family life, it doesn't provide family members opportunity to set and eat at one place. Moreover it has a bad effect on the environment because it comes with wrapping or polystyrene which make pollution when we're burning them.

**الوجبات السريعة**

هي واحدة من اسهل وارخص طرق الطعام انها توفر الكثير من الوقت والمال، خاصة للناس الذين يأتون الى بيوتهم من العمل. لكنها تعتبر العدو الاسوأ لصحة الانسان هذه الايام. ان فيها العديد من الجوانب السلبية على الانسان. واحدة من هذه الجوانب السلبية انها تحتوي على الكثير جدا من الدهن، الزيت، والملح، والتي تجعل الانسان ان يزداد وزنه ويعطش. انها ايضا يمكن ان تكون سيئة للعائلة انها لاتزود افراد العائلة الفرصة للجلوس وتناول الطعام في مكان واحد. علاوة على ذلك ان لها تأثيرا سيئا على البيئة لانها تاتي بغلاف او بالبوليسترين اللذين يسببان تلوثا عندما نحرقهما.



**Activity Book - Further Practice 1**

**A- What are these people thinking or saying? Write sentences with *If only* or *I wish* + the past perfect.**

(→ *If only/I wish* + ماضي تام) اكتب جملاً مع (ماضي تام) *If only/I wish* مع

- 1- *I wish / not steal that money*  
- *I wish I hadn't stolen that money.*
- 2- *If only/we walk instead of coming by car*  
- *If only we had walked instead of coming by car.*
- 3- *I wish / not leave my mobile phone at home*  
- *I wish I hadn't left my mobile phone at home.*
- 4- *If only / drive more carefully*  
- *If only I had driven more carefully.*
- 5- *If only / I work harder for this exam*  
- *If only I had worked harder for this exam.*
- 6- *I wish / not eat so much chocolate*  
- *I wish I hadn't eaten so much chocolate.*

**B- listen to a talk about regrets. Write the correct percentages next to the headings.** أستمع الى حديث عن ندم. اكتب النسب المئوية الصحيحة بجانب العناوين.

**Narrator:** A recent survey of a hundred people's greatest regret has revealed some interesting statistics. The survey was of British men and women aged fifty. They were only allowed to name one regret. Thirty per cent had regrets about their family life, fifteen per cent had regrets about their careers or working life and ten per cent had regrets about their health. The good news however, is that forty-five per cent of those interviewed had no regrets at all.

- |                           |                    |     |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| No regrets                | غير نادمين على شيء | 45% |
| Regrets about family life |                    | 30% |
| Regrets about jobs        |                    | 15% |
| Regrets about health      |                    | 10% |

**اطلب النسخة الاصلية من مكتب الشمس حصراً**

موبايل / ٠٧٩٠١٧٥٣٤٦١ / ٠٧٨٠٥٠٣٠٩٤٢



## UNIT SIX

### Lesson -1-

### ماذا يظهر على؟ What's on?

#### مفردات : Vocabulary

cartoon	افلام رسوم كاريكاتيرية	chat show	برنامج حوارى	lifestyle	طريقة عيش
soap opera	مسلسل أو مسرحية (تعالج مشاكل الحياة اليومية)			drama	مسرحية
decorate ( a house)	يزخرف (البيت)				

★ Match six of these types of programme to the TV screens.

صل ستة من أنواع البرامج هذه الى شاشات التلفاز.

<b>E</b> 1- Cartoon	<b>6- News</b>
<b>B</b> 2- Chat show	<b>F</b> 7- Soap opera
3- Education	<b>A</b> 8- Sport
<b>D</b> 4- Film/movie	<b>C</b> 9- Lifestyle
5- Music	10- Weather forecast

★ What do you know about each type of programme? Talk about them in groups. ☐ ماذا تعرفون عن كل نوع من أنواع البرامج؟ تحدثوا عنها بشكل مجموعات.

#### Examples:

**Student 1:** On a chat show, a presenter interviews famous people. They usually sit on a sofa.

**Student 2:** A lifestyle programme is about cooking, gardening, decorating your house, or holidays.

**Student 3:** A soap opera is a drama on TV about the everyday lives of people. It may be on several times a week.

### Activity Book-Lesson 1

A- Listen to six different TV programmes and write the correct programme type. ☐ استمع الى البرامج التلفزيونية الستة المختلفة ثم اكتب نوع البرنامج الصحيح.

#### One: Weather forecast - النشرة الجوية

It will be cloudy over much of England and Wales in the morning. If you want sun, Scotland will be the best place to look for it. In the afternoon that cloud will clear away and it should be warm and sunny over the whole country, with temperatures around 18 or 19 degrees. The southwest will be a little cooler than the average, though.



**Two: Chat show - برنامج حوارى**

**Host:** Rose Johnson, welcome to London.

**Rose:** Thank you, Alan.

**Host:** You've just finished a film with Tom Marconi.

**Rose:** Yeah.

**Host:** What's it like working with him?

**Rose:** Oh, he's just fantastic! I learnt so much from working with him.

**Host:** Is it true that you're coming live in...

**Three: Cartoon - أفلام رسوم متحركة**

**Man:** Oh, no! Hey, what are you doing?

**Cat:** I haven't really got time to tell you, I'm afraid.

**Man:** Hey! Come back here!

**Cat:** Oh yeah - maybe later!

**Man:** That's my fish!

**Cat:** Correction - that was your fish!

**Four: News - نشرة الأخبار**

**Man:** ... will speak to a meeting of European finance ministers later today. Many questions are being asked about this morning's train crash in Scotland. Fiona Bright is in Glasgow. Fiona, can you tell us any more about of this accident?

**Fiona:** I'm afraid not, Jeremy. The police are working hard, but they have nothing to tell us at the moment.

**Man:** Do we know how many people are injured?

**Fiona:** Yes, Jeremy. Ambulances have taken forty-one people to hospital. And, thankfully, no one has been killed.

**Man:** Have you spoken to anyone who saw the accident...

**Five: Lifestyle - طريقة العيش**

**Woman:** I'm staying at the Hotel Splendid on the island of Phuket in Thailand. To get here, I flew to Bangkok and then took a short flight to Phuket. That cost £579 with British Airways. That's quite expensive, but the hotel, the food and everything else here is incredibly cheap. And it's incredibly nice! The water is warm and clean, and full of beautiful...

**Six: Education - برنامج تعليمي / ثقافي**

**Man:** We are looking today at the different ways in which spiders build their webs. There are thousands of species of spider around the world, and they construct their webs in many different ways. In fact we ought to start by pointing out that some spider species do not build webs at all. On the island of St Kitts in the Caribbean, there is an interesting...



## Lesson 2

### لغة الصحافة - The language of newspapers

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

destroy (v.) يدمر	explosion (n.) انفجار	fire brigade (n.) فرقة اطفاء
condition حالة	serious مهم/خطير	evacuate يجلي/يخلي
instruct (v.) يأمر	vehicle مركبة/عربة	interior داخلي/خصوصي
prevent يمنع	bring under control يجعله تحت السيطرة	

★ Read the article and choose the best headline.  
اقرأ المقالة واختر أفضل عنوان

قطعة مهمة في الامتحانات

**POLICE CLOSE QUEEN STREET**  
**FIRE DESTROYS OFFICE BUILDING** النار تدمر مبنى تجاري  
**OFFICE FIRE - FIRE BRIGADE TOO SLOW**  
**EXPLOSION DESTROYS OFFICE BUILDING**

The fire started on the ground floor of number 218 Queen Street at 10:10 a.m. and reached the fourth floor within minutes. The police and fire brigade arrived at 10:19 and they immediately began to evacuate every one from number 218 and the buildings on either side.

Three minutes later, there was a loud explosion. The police instructed the crowd in the street to move away from the building. They placed police vehicles at the end of Queen Street and they prevented members of the public from entering the street.

The fire was brought under control around 11:00 o'clock, but the interior of the building had been completely destroyed by then. Ambulances took five people to hospital, but their condition was not serious.

بدأت النار في الطابق الأرضي للبنائية ٢١٨ شارع الملكة عند الساعة العاشرة وعشر دقائق صباحاً ووصلت الى الطابق الرابع خلال دقائق. وصلت الشرطة وفرقة الاطفاء عند الساعة ١٩:١٠ وحالا بدأوا باجلاء جميع الأشخاص من المبنى والمباني في كلا الجانبين.

بعد ثلاث دقائق، كان يوجد انفجار مدوي. أمرت الشرطة الناس المتجمعين في الشارع أن يبتعدوا من المبنى. لقد وضعوا مركبات الشرطة في نهاية شارع الملكة ومنعوا افراد الشرطة من دخول الشارع.

عند الساعة الحادية عشر تم وضع النار تحت السيطرة، لكن المبنى من الداخل مدمر بالكامل. نقلت سيارات الاسعاف خمسة مصابين الى المستشفى، لكن حالتهم لم تكن خطيرة.

**Answer: FIRE DESTROYS OFFICE BUILDING**

أسئلة عن القطعة

1. The fire started on the ground floor of number 218 and reached the **fourth** floor. (fifth/fourth) بدأت النار في الطابق الأرضي للبنائية ٢١٨ ووصلت الى الطابق الرابع.
2. The fire started in number 218 at **10:10 a.m** and the fire was brought under control around **11:00 o'clock**. بدأت النار في البنائية ٢١٨ في الساعة ١٠:١٠ صباحاً وتمت السيطرة على النار حوالي الساعة ١١:٠٠.



3. How did the police begin to evacuation? كيف بدأت الشرطة بالاحلاء؟  
 - They immediately began to evacuate everyone from number 218 and the buildings on either side. مباشرة بدأت الشرطة باخلاء جميع الأشخاص من المبنى ٢١٨ والمباني في كلا الجانبين.
4. Where the fire started in the office building? أين بدأت النار في المبنى التجاري؟  
 - The fire started on the ground floor. بدأت النار في الطابق الأرضي.
5. The police began to **evacuate** everyone from number 218 and the buildings on either side. بدأت الشرطة باخلاء جميع الأشخاص من المبنى ٢١٨ والمباني في كلا الجانبين.
6. Three minutes later, there was a loud **explosion** in the office building. بعد ثلاث دقائق كان هناك انفجارا قويا في المبنى التجاري.
7. Ambulances took **five people** to hospital, but their condition was not serious. نقلت سيارات الاسعاف خمسة أشخاص الى المستشفى، لكن حالتهم لم تكن خطيرة.
8. How many people did the ambulances take to hospital from the office building? كم عدد الأشخاص الذين نقلتهم سيارات الاسعاف الى المستشفى من المبنى التجاري؟  
 - They took five people. نقلت خمسة أشخاص.

★ Read the language box. اقرأ صندوق اللغة.

### Formal and informal language:

#### اللغة الرسمية وغير الرسمية

- \* Written English, for example in a newspaper, is usually formal. Spoken English is usually **informal**.  
 اللغة الانكليزية المكتوبة، مثلا في صحيفة، هي عادة لغة رسمية. أما لغة التحدث فهي عادة لغة غير رسمية.
- \* There are differences in vocabulary and in grammar.  
 توجد اختلافات في المفردات وفي النحو.

**Children** in many parts of the world are starving. (formal - رسمي)

**Kids** in many parts of the world are starving. (informal - غير رسمي)

It **does not rain** much in Iraq. (formal - رسمي)

It **doesn't rain** much in Iraq. (informal - غير رسمي)

### Activity Book-Lesson 2

A- Read the article on Student's Book page 71 again. Then listen and complete this text about the same event.

اقرأ المقالة على صفحة (٧١) من كتاب الطالب مرة أخرى. ثم اسمع وأكمل هذا النص حول نفس الحادثة.

The fire started on the ground floor of number 218 Queen Street at 10.10 a.m. and it ① **got up to** the fourth floor ② **in** minutes. As soon as the police and fire brigade ③ **got here**, they ④ **got** everyone ⑤ **out of** number 218 and the buildings on either side very quickly.

A few minutes later, there was a loud ⑥ **bang**. The police ⑦ **told** the crowd in the street to ⑧ **get** away from the building. They ⑨ **put** police ⑩ **cars** at the end of Queen Street, and they ⑪ **stopped** people from ⑫ **going into** the street.

By 11 o'clock, the fire seemed ⑬ **to be out**, but the ⑭ **inside** of the building had been completely destroyed. Ambulances took five people to hospital, but ⑮ **they were OK**.



C- Match the formal (written) words and the informal (spoken) words.  
صل الكلمات الرسمية (المكتوبة) والكلمات غير الرسمية (المنطوقة).

	formal	informal		formal	informal
1-	arrive	d- get here	7-	move	c- get away
2-	enter	f- go into	8-	not serious	h- OK
3-	evacuate	e- get out of	9-	place	j- put
4-	explosion	a- bang	10-	prevent	k- stop
5-	instruct	l- tell	11-	the interior	g- inside
6-	members of the public	i- people	12-	vehicles	b- cars

D- The language in these sentences is *informal*. Rewrite the sentences so that they are *formal*. Change the contractions and replace the underlined words. Use the words in the box, changing the form of the verbs when necessary.

اللغة في هذه الجمل غير رسمية. أعد كتابة الجمل لتكون رسمية. غير الاختصارات واستبدلها بكلمات. استخدم كلمات من الصندوق، غير شكل الأفعال حيثما يكون ضرورياً.

be quiet	become	boy	children	mother
difficult	director	goodbye	improve	escape from
football	television	thank you	very good	

- The lions can't get out of their cage.  
The lions cannot escape from their cage.
- It is quite hard to work with all this noise.  
- It's quite difficult to work with all this noise.
- Bye! And thanks very much.  
- Goodbye! And thank you very much.
- I'm the boss of a small company in Baghdad.  
- I am the director of a small company in Baghdad.
- My mum told the kids to shut up.  
- My mother told the children to be quiet.
- They were watching a soccer match on TV.  
- They were watching a football match on television.
- We're having a great time.  
- We are having a very good time.
- It got so hot that we couldn't go out.  
- It become so hot that we could not go out.
- That guy won't be in the team.  
- That boy will not be in the team.
- The team's been getting better all this year.  
- The team has been improving all this year.



## Lesson 3

قلت انك كنت سعيدا **You said you were happy****Vocabulary :** مفردات

رواية novel

مكافئة award

ينشر (v.) publish

ذهل/صعق stunned

لغة صينية Mandarin

مقدم (برنامج) presenter

★ Read a conversation from a chat show. Underline the reported speech in the conversation. اقرأ المحادثة من برنامج حوار. ضع خطأ تحت الكلام غير المباشر في المحادثة.

**Alan:** Welcome to the show. I'm Alan Jones and my first guest is William Lee. I interviewed him on this show last year. He was only 21 and he'd just had a novel published. William said he was very happy. Yesterday, that novel won this year's First Book Award. Let's find out how he feels now. William, welcome back and congratulations!

**William:** Thank you, Alan.

**Alan:** William, last year you said you were very happy that Memories had been published. How do you feel today?

**William:** Well, er, I can't really believe it! I'm stunned.

**Alan:** You told me last year that you didn't even expect Memories to be a great success.

**William:** That's true, I didn't. I was just pleased to see it in print.

**Alan:** I seem to remember you said that your next book would be better.

**William:** And that was true. I certainly didn't expect my first book to win a prize.

**Alan:** And what have you been doing since then?

**William:** After your show, I had a short holiday. Then I started writing again. I've nearly finished another novel.

**Alan:** But last year you said that writing was a very lonely occupation. You told me that you weren't sure that you'd continue.

**William:** Did I say that? Well, it's true. There have been a few times when I thought I should give up and find a more normal job.

**Alan:** But you didn't.

**William:** No. When I felt like that, I went to the gym and worked out really hard for an hour or two. After that, I found I could settle down again.

**Alan:** So now you're a famous author. Well done!



**Answers:**

- 1- You told me last year that you didn't even expect Memories to be a great success.
- 2- you said that your next book would be better.
- 3- last year you said that writing was a very lonely occupation.
- 4- You told me that you weren't sure that you'd continue.

★ **Study the language box.** تأمل صندوق اللغة.

**Reported speech: tense and pronoun changes**  
الكلام غير المباشر: تغييرات الصيغة والضمير

- **have → had**  
I have a cold. → She said she had a cold.
- **have to/ must → had to**  
You must leave early. → He told us we had to leave early.
- **is going to → was going to**  
I'm going to cry. → He said he was going to cry.
- **will → would**  
We'll give you a lift. → They said they would give me a lift.

★ توجد اربعة انواع اساسية للكلام غير المباشر (Reported speech).

١. الجمل الخبرية مع (say/ tell) (Reported statements with say/ tell).

٢. الجمل الاستفهامية (Reported questions).

٣. الجمل الامرية (Reported commands).

٤. الكلام المباشر مع بقية الافعال (Reported with other verbs).

**Reported statements with say/tell: الجمل الخبرية مع say / tell**

**الشكل - Form**

\* عندما تذكر نفس كلمات المتكلم، غير صيغ الافعال والضمائر. الفعلان الرئيسيان للكلام غير المباشر هما (say/tell). في هذه الامثلة، يمكن ان يحل محل (said) الفعل (told me). يمكن حذف (that) في هذه الامثلة.

★ **present simple → past simple:** مضارع بسيط يتحول الى ماضي بسيط

- Tariq: "I know all about it". (مباشر)
- Tariq said (that) he knew all about it. (غير مباشر)

★ **present continuous → past continuous:** مضارع مستمر الى ماضي مستمر

- Mariam: "I am enjoying myself". (مباشر)
- Mariam said (that) she was enjoying herself. (غير مباشر)

★ **present perfect → past perfect:** مضارع تام الى ماضي تام

- Sara: "my father has bought me a new computer". (مباشر)
- Sara said (that) her father had bought her a new computer. (غير مباشر)



★ **present perfect continuous → past perfect continuous:**

مضارع تام مستمر الى ماضي تام مستمر

- Ahmed: "I have been playing tennis". (مباشر)
- Ahmed said (that) he had been playing tennis. (غير مباشر)

★ **past simple → past perfect:** ماضي بسيط الى ماضي تام

- Salwa: "you didn't phone me". (مباشر)
- Salwa said (that) I had not phoned her. (غير مباشر)

★ **Past continuous → past perfect continuous:** ماضي مستمر الى ماضي تام مستمر

- Nour: "I was waiting outside". (مباشر)
- Nour said (that) she had been waiting outside. (غير مباشر)

★ **will → would:**

- "We will have to get to the match early. It will be easy for us to get there by bus". (مباشر)
- They said (that) they would have to get to the match early and (that) it would be easy for them to get there by bus. (غير مباشر)

**Pronoun changes:** تغيرات الضمائر

I → he/she	me → him/her	we → they
us → them	you → I / we	

**لاحظ:** أن تغيرات مختلف الضمائر ربما تكون ضرورية. التغيرات تعتمد على عدد المتحدثين والحالة.

### Activity Book-Lesson 3

A- What were William's own words in his first interview with Alan Jones? Tick the correct boxes.

ماذا كانت كلمات وليام في مقابلاته الاولى مع آلان جونز؟ اشر الصناديق الصحيحة.

- a- I was very happy that my book had been published.

b- I am very happy that my book has been published. (✓)

c- You were very happy that my book had been published.
- a- I don't expect it to be a great success. (✓)

b- I didn't expect it to be a great success.

c- I will expect it to be a great success.
- a- My next book was better.

b- My next book will be better. (✓)

c- My next book was better



- 4- a- Writing was a very lonely occupation.  
 b- Writing would be a very lonely occupation.  
 c- Writing is a very lonely occupation. (✓)
- 5- a- I'm not sure that I'll continue. (✓)  
 b- I wasn't sure that I'll continue.  
 c- I'm not sure that I would continue.

B- Listen to some of William's first interview with Alan Jones.  
 Complete the reported sentences.

استمع الى بعض من مقابلة ولييم الاولى مع الان جونز. اكمل الجمل غير المباشرة.

### Tapescript:

- |       |          |  |
|-------|----------|--|
| One   | William: | I still live at home with my parents.                            |
| Two   | William: | I lived in China until I was fifteen.                            |
| Three | William: | I've always liked writing stories. I'm no good at anything else. |
| Four  | William: | I'm going to relax in Spain for a month.                         |
| Five  | William: | After that, I'll get on with my next novel.                      |
| Six   | William: | It'll probably be set in China.                                  |
| Seven | William: | I can't spell, so I have to use 'spell check' a lot.             |
| Eight | William: | I write in English, but I think in Mandarin.                     |

- 1- He said he still lived at home with his parents. (ماضي بسيط)
- 2- He said he had lived in China until he was fifteen. (ماضي تام)
- 3- He said he had always liked writing stories and that he was no good at anything else. ماضي تام
- 4- He said he was going to relax in Spain for a month. (ماضي مستمر)
- 5- He said he would get on with his next novel after that. (would)
- 6- He said it would probably be set in China. (would)
- 7- He said he couldn't spell, so he had to use 'spell check' a lot. (could)
- 8- He said he wrote in English, but he thought in Mandarin. (ماضي بسيط)



**Activity Book-Lesson 4****Vocabulary : مفردات**

محترف / مهني professional

**A- Match Younis Mahmood's words with the sentences from a newspaper report. Complete the last two sentences.**

صل كلمات يونس محمود مع الجمل من مراسل صحفي. اكمل الجملتين الاخيرتين.

**C- I'm joining the Iraqi national team next month.**

**1- Younis Mahmood said that he was joining the Iraqi national team next month.**

**B- I started playing football in Kirkuk, my home city.**

**2- He said that he had started playing football in Kirkuk, his home city.**

**A- As a professional, I've been in six different teams.**

**3- He said that, as a professional, he had been in six different teams.**

**E- I've been playing in the Gulf for the last two years.**

**4- He said that he had been playing in the Gulf for the last two years.**

**D- I've been looking for a new team since January.**

**5- He said that he had been looking for a new team since January.**

**F- I scored a lot of goals last year.**

**6- He said that he had scored a lot of goals last years.**

**B- Read and link these rules and examples of changes in verb tenses in reported speech.**

اقرأ ثم صل هذه القواعد وأمثلة التغيير في صيغ الفعل في الكلام غير المباشر.

الكلام المباشر – Direct speech	الكلام غير المباشر – Reported speech
<b>1- Past simple</b> <i>'I saw the match.'</i> (c)	<b>C- Past perfect</b> <i>She said she had seen the match.</i>
<b>2- Present perfect</b> <i>'I've lost my mobile.'</i> (a)	<b>a- Past perfect</b> <i>She said she had lost her mobile.</i>
<b>3- Present perfect continuous</b> <i>'I've been waiting for hours.'</i> (b)	<b>b- Past perfect continuous</b> <i>He said he had been waiting for hours.</i>

**C- Tariq, 17, and his sister Layla, 15, went on holiday with their parents to Babylon in Iraq. Did they enjoy the holiday? Complete the reported sentences on the next page.**

طارق عمره ١٧ واخته ١٥ سنة. ذهبا في عطلة مع والديهما الى مدينة بابل في العراق. هل تمتعا في عطلتهم؟ اكمل جمل الكلام غير المباشر على الصفحة التالية.



### (Tariq)

- 1- It was a boring holiday. There was nothing to do.
- 2- We had to go out every day and look at old buildings.
- 3- There was an international football match on TV, but I missed it.
- 4- I tried to have a good time with the family, but it was hard.
- 5- I've never been to such a boring place.
- 6- I don't want to go back there.

### (Layla)

- 1- It was a fantastic holiday. There was lots to see and do.
- 2- We went out on lots of interesting visits to temples and so on.
- 3- I took hundreds of photos of the Ishtar Gate and the temples.
- 4- Tariq just listened to his iPod and didn't speak to anyone.
- 5- I've been writing a diary of our holiday.
- 6- I will definitely go to Babylon again.

- 
- 1- Tariq said **it had been a boring holiday. There had been nothing to do.**  
Layla said **it had been a fantastic holiday. There had been lots to see and do.**
  - 2- Tariq said **they had had to go out every day and look at old buildings.**  
Layla said **they had gone out on lots of interesting visits to temples and so on.**
  - 3- Tariq said **there had been an international football match on TV, but he had missed it.**  
Layla said **she had taken hundreds of photos of Ishtar Gate and the temples.**
  - 4- Tariq said **he had tried to have a good time with the family, but it had been hard.**  
Layla said **Tariq had listened to his iPod and hadn't spoken to anyone.**
  - 5- Tariq said **he had never been to such a boring place.**  
Layla said **she had been writing a diary of their holiday.**
  - 6- Tariq said **he didn't want to go back there.**  
Layla said **she would definitely go to Babylon again.**



## Lesson 5

## Different opinions آراء مختلفة

## Vocabulary : مفردات

adventure(v. n.) يغامر/مغامرة

horror رعب

science fiction خيال علمي

trailer فيلم قصير (يعرض مشاهد من فيلم)

directed (by) اخرج (من قبل)

production (n.) انتاج

unforgettable(adj.) لا ينسى

historical تاريخي

psychological(adj.) نفسي

thriller مشر

special effect مؤثرات خاصة

location (n.) موقع

brilliant رائع

superb(adj.) رائع/ممتاز

★ Read the poster. We use 'key words' to describe different types of film. Choose three words from the box to describe *The Spanish Captain*.

اقرأ الملصق. نحن نستخدم كلمات دلالة لوصف أنواع مختلفة من الافلام. اختر ثلاثة كلمات من الصندوق لوصف فيلم

.( *The Spanish Captain* )

adventure

cartoon

comedy

historical

horror

police

psychological

romantic

science

fiction

thriller

**Answer:**

The most likely words are historical (because of the picture) and thriller (because of the phrase "a thrilling story"). Others are adventure and romantic.

★ listen to a trailer for *The Spanish Captain* and make notes. What information is in the poster but not in the trailer?

استمع الى الفيلم القصير عن ( *The Spanish Captain* ) وكون ملاحظات. ماهي المعلومات في الملصق لكنها غير موجودة في الفيلم؟

**Tapescript:**

Jo McGregor is brilliant as Captain Diego Santos. Emma Knightly is unforgettable as his lovely young bride in *The Spanish Captain*. He is Spanish, she is English. But the year is 1588 and the two countries are at war.

This is the beautiful story. Captain Santos has an impossible choice to make. The king of Spain tells him to go to war. His heart tells him to stay at home.

You will laugh. You will cry. You will be amazed by the fantastic special effects. You will love the wonderful music, written for this film by David Williams. You will never forget *The Spanish Captain*.



## Lesson 6

## A famous Iraqi artist فنانة عراقية مشهورة

## Vocabulary : مفردات

seriously باهتمام/بجدية  
publicity (n.) شهرة/اعلان  
exhibition معرض  
experiment تجربة

take (sth.) seriously يأخذ الأمر بجدية  
still life لوحة زيتية تمثل أشياء غير حية  
decoration زخرفة

## Widad Al Orfali

This month, Eman Ahmed interviews Widad Al Orfali, the award-winning Iraqi painter.

Where and when were you born?

I was born In Baghdad in 1929

Where did you study?

I studied Social Studies and Arts in Beirut University for Women in 1951. Then, I studied painting at Queen Alia College in Amman. Khalid Al Jadir was my great teacher.

Do you prefer painting or other arts?

Oh, definitely painting. I love colours.

How much time do you spend working?

Well, I work for more than twelve hours each day, although there are also other things to work on.

Have you kept the same style in painting?

In 1973, I visited Al Andalus In Spain and there I started thinking of changing my style from realism to expressionism.

Did you learn any other arts?

Yes, music. I'm talented at music and I learnt how to play the piano when I was only six. At the age of 13 or 14 I could play perfectly.

## وداد الأورفلي

هذا الشهر، إيمان أحمد تجري مقابلة مع وداد الأورفلي، الحائزة على جائزة الرسام العراقي

أين ومتى ولدت؟

- ولدت في بغداد عام ١٩٢٩.

أين درست؟

- درست دراسات اجتماعية وفنون في جامعة بيروت للبنات عام ١٩٥١. ثم درست الرسم في كلية الملكة عالية في عمان. كان خالد الجادر مدرسي الكبير.

هل تفضلين الرسم أم فنون أخرى؟

- آه، بالتأكيد الرسم. أنا أحب الألوان.

كم الوقت الذي تقضيه في العمل؟

- حسنا، أنا أعمل أكثر من ١٢ ساعة يوميا، رغم وجود أمور أخرى للقيام بها.

هل احتفظت بنفس الأسلوب في الرسم؟

- في عام ١٩٧٣، زرت الاندلس في اسبانيا وهناك بدأت التفكير في تغيير اسلوبي من الواقعية الى التعبيرية.

هل تعلمت أية فنون أخرى؟

- نعم، الموسيقى. أنا موهوبة في الموسيقى وتعلمت كيف أعزف على البيانو عندما كنت بعمر ست سنوات فقط. وبعمر ١٣ أو ١٤ سنة تمكنت من العزف بشكل مثالي.



**Have you had any exhibitions?**

*I have had many solo exhibitions and taken part in many group exhibitions, in Baghdad, Amman, Bonn, New York and London.*

**Why have you stopped painting?**

*For some health reasons I have stopped painting. However, I have gone back to music.*

**What are you going to do next?**

*I'm writing my diary, which will focus on the 1960s and 1970s in Iraq.*

**Have you received any prizes?**

*Yes, I have won many prizes from the Iraqi Ministry of Information, the Artists Union and the Artists Society In Iraq. I have also won the Gold Necklace in Jordan and many other prizes.*

**هل لديك معارض؟**

- كانت لدي العديد من المعارض المنفردة وشاركت في العديد من المعارض الجماعية في بغداد، عمان، بون، نيويورك ولندن.

**لماذا توقفت عن الرسم؟**

- لبعض الأسباب الصحية توقفت عن الرسم، ولكنني عدت الى الموسيقى.

**ماهو عملك القادم؟**

- أنا أكتب يومياتي، التي ستركز على سنوات ستينات وسبعينات القرن الماضي في العراق.

**هل تلقيت أية جوائز؟**

- نعم، لقد فزت بالعديد من الجوائز من وزارة الاعلام العراقية، اتحاد الفنانين وجمعية الفنانين في العراق. وفزت أيضا بجائزة القلادة الذهبية في الأردن وجوائز أخرى عديدة.

**★ Read the interview. Are these sentences True or False?**

اقرأ المقابلة. هل ان هذه الجمل صحيحة أم خطأ؟

- 1- Eman asked Widad where she sold her paintings. **F** ايمان سألت وداد أين باعت رسوماتها
- 2- She asked her which colours she liked best. **F** سألتها أي الألوان تحبها أكثر
- 3- She asked her if the prizes were important to her. **F** سألتها هل ان الجوائز كانت مهمة لها
- 4- She asked her how much time she spent working. **T** سألتها كم تقضي من الوقت في عملها
- 5- She asked her whether she had taught anyone to paint. **F** سألتها ان كانت قد علمت أحد ما لرسم
- 6- She asked her where she studied. **T** سألتها أين درست
- 7- She asked her what her favourite subject was. **F** سألتها أي درس كان مفضل لديها
- 8- She asked her where she lived. **F** سألتها أين عاشت
- 9- She asked her whether she preferred painting or other arts. **T** سألتها ان كانت تفضل الرسم أو فنون أخرى
- 10- She asked her how much money she had made from her paintings. **F** سألتها كم هي الأموال التي جنتها من الرسم
- 11- She asked her why she had stopped painting. **T** سألتها لماذا توقفت عن الرسم
- 12- She asked her what she was going to do next. **T** سألتها ما هو عملها القادم



**Reported questions:** الجمل الاستفهامية في الكلام غير المباشر

\* When you are reporting questions, change the tenses of the verbs as you do when reporting statements.

عندما تكون أسئلة بكلام غير مباشر، غير صيغ الأفعال كما تفعل مع الجمل المثبتة للكلام غير المباشر.

\* You can use whether instead of if.

- They asked if I was interested in the job.

- They asked whether I was interested in the job.

**Form - الشكل**

\* غير صيغ الأفعال والضمائر كما تفعل مع الجمل الخبرية (المذكورة سابقاً):

الجمل الاستفهامية تصبح خبرية عندما تتحول الى الكلام غير المباشر. (نحذف علامة الاستفهام)

- "Where is the stadium?" (مباشر) She asked where the stadium was. (غير مباشر)

- "What do they want?" (مباشر) He asked me what they wanted. (غير مباشر)

- How much have you spent?" (مباشر) They asked us how much we had spent.

- "Why are you still here?" She asked me why I was still there.

\* مع اسئلة (yes/no)، استخدم الكلمات (if/ whether) بعد فعل جملة الكلام غير المباشر.

- "Is there any bread?" He asked if there was any bread.

- "Do you like Indian music?" She asked whether we liked Indian music.

**Activity Book-Lesson 6**

A- Eman asked a lot more questions which did not appear in the magazine article on Student's Book page 74. Read these reported questions and write Eman's actual words.

سألت ايمان أسئلة كثيرة جداً التي لم تظهر في مقالة المجلة على صفحة (٧٤) من كتاب الطالب. اقرأ الأسئلة غير المباشرة هذه ثم أكتب كلمات ايمان الحقيقية.

1- She asked her if her parents were happy about her being a painter.

- Are your parents happy about you being a painter?

2- She asked her if she had any brothers or sisters

- Do you have/Have you got any brothers or sisters?

3- She asked her if her family liked painting, too.

- Do your family like painting, too?

4- She asked her which her best painting was.

- Which is your best painting?

5- She asked her when she had first sold a painting.

- When did you first sell a painting?

6- She asked her what other painters she admired.

- What other painters do you admire?

7- She asked her where she got her ideas.

- Where do you get your ideas?



8- She asked her if she used photographs for her work.

- Do you use photographs for your works?

9- She asked her whether she used the Internet to sell paintings.

- Do you use the Internet to sell paintings?

10- She asked her which countries she had been to.

- Which countries have you been to?

**B- Jameel has not seen his Aunt Salwa for five years. She phoned him and asked him lots of questions. Listen and make notes of her questions.**

لم يرى جميل عمته سلوى لمدة خمس سنوات. اتصلت به وسألته الكثير من الأسئلة. استمع وكون ملاحظات عن أسئلتها.

1- How tall are you?

2- Which year are you in at school?

3- What are you studying?

4- Do you still play tennis?

5- Did you receive a birthday present from me?

6- Have you learnt to drive yet?

### Answers: (Notes)

1- how tall?

2- what year school?

3- studying what?

4- play tennis?

5- get birthday present?

6- learnt to drive?

★ **Use your notes to tell Jameel's mother what Aunt Salwa asked.**

استخدم ملاحظاتك لتخبر أم جميل ماذا سألت العمّة سلوى.

1- She asked me how tall I was.

2- She asked me which year I was in at school.

3- She asked me what I was studying.

4- She asked me if I still played tennis.

5- She asked me if I had received a birthday present from her.

6- She asked me if I had learnt to drive.

## **Lesson 7**

### **Headlines - عناوين**

### **Vocabulary : مفردات**

terrified مروع

golf لعبة الغولف

disaster كارثة

poisonous (adj.) سام / خطير

keen متحمس

miracle معجزة

promote يرقّي / يعزز

collapse ينهار / يخفق



★ Read the newspaper articles and choose the best headline for each one. اقرأ المقالات الصحفية ثم اختر أفضل عنوان لكل مقالة.

القطعة مهمة في الامتحانات

**1** A little South African boy had a very lucky escape yesterday. Sitting by a river near Cape Town, Mrs Betty Paton saw her three-year-old son Max holding a snake and biting it. 'I was terrified,' she said. 'It was a poisonous snake, but Max had almost bitten the head off.' Mrs Paton took Max to hospital, but doctors said that the snake had not bitten him.

**2** Some of the world's best golf players have arrived in the Gulf States for a ten-day tour. The aim of the tour is to promote the sport among local young people. The professionals will play a round or two with keen young members of golf clubs and give them tips on how to improve their game. Don't miss this fantastic opportunity!

**3** Thousands of fish have died in the River Thames, near London after a traffic accident on a bridge. A petrol tanker carrying 10,000 litres of petrol hit another lorry as they were crossing the narrow bridge in Richmond. A hole was made in the side of the tanker and at least 50% of the petrol poured onto the road and then down into the river. This is the worst case of pollution in the Thames since 1992.

**4** A camel has been sold for \$150,000 in the United Arab Emirates (UAE). This is not just an ordinary camel, of course! It is top-quality, racing camel - it has already won more than fifty races. Camel racing is very popular in the UAE and high prices are often paid for the best animals. The new owner is a businessman from Dubai, Omar Abdel Hamid. He said, 'Yes this is an expensive camel. But I'm sure that I'll make a lot of money with it.'

١- ولد صغير من جنوب افريقيا نجا يوم أمس بشكل محظوظ جداً. كان جالساً بجانب نهر قرب مدينة كيب تاون. السيدة بيتي باتون شاهدت ابنها ماكس البالغ من العمر ثلاث سنوات وهو يحمل أفعى ويعضها. كانت مرعوبة، قالت. كانت أفعى سامية، لكن ماكس كان تقريبا قد توقف عن عضها من رأسها. السيدة باتون أخذت ماكس الى المستشفى، لكن الأطباء قالوا ان الأفعى لم تلدغه.

٢- بعض من أفضل لاعبي الغولف في العالم وصلوا الى دول الخليج في رحلة لمدة عشرة أيام. هدف الرحلة هو تشجيع الرياضة بين الشباب المحليين. سيلعب المحترفون جولاً أو جولتين مع الشباب أعضاء اندية الغولف المتحمسين واعطائهم نصائح حول كيف يحسنون لعبهم. لاتفوت هذه الفرصة الرائعة!

٣- مات الآلاف من السمك في نهر التايمس، قرب لندن، بعد حادث مروري على جسر. شاحنة بترول تنقل عشرة آلاف لتر من البترول صدمت شاحنة أخرى عندما كانتا تعبران جسراً ضيقاً في مدينة ريشموند. حدث ثقب في جانب شاحنة البترول وانسكب حوالي ٥٠٪ من البترول على الطريق ومن ثم الى الأسفل الى النهر. هذه أسوأ حالة تلوث في نهر التايمس منذ عام ١٩٩٢.

٤- بيع جمل بمائة وخمسين ألف دولار في دولة الامارات العربية المتحدة. هذا ليس جملاً عادياً، طبعاً! انه من نوع راق، انه جمل سباق - لقد فاز حتى الآن بأكثر من خمسين سباقاً. سباق الجمال مشهور جداً في دولة الامارات وأسعار مرتفعة غالباً ما تدفع لأفضل الجمال. الفائز الجديد هو رجل أعمال من دبي، عمر عبد الحميد. قال، 'نعم، هذا جمل غالي، لكنني متأكد انني سأجني الكثير من المال معه.'



**Answers:**

- 1- Boy Bites Snake.
- 2- Opportunity for Young Golf Players. /Golf professionals in the Gulf
- 3- 5,000 Litres of Petrol in River: Fish Die.
- 4- Top Price for Top Camel.

**أسئلة عن القطعة****1**

- 1- Max, a little South African boy had a very **lucky** escape yesterday. (lucky/unlucky) ماكس، ولد صغير من جنوب افريقيا كان محظوظا عندما استطاع الهرب يوم أمس.
- 2- A snake bit Max. (true/false) (خطأ) ثعبان تعض ماكس.
- 3- The snake was a poisonous one. (true/false) (صح) كانت الثعبان سامة.
- 4- Why a little South African boy had a very lucky escape?  
لماذا كان الولد محظوظا في الهرب؟  
- Because he was holding a poisonous snake and biting it, but the snake luckily had not bitten him.  
لأنه كان يحمل ثعبانا سامة وكان يضربها، لكن الثعبان وبشكل محظوظ لم تلدغه.

**2**

- 1- Golf players have arrived in the Gulf States to **promote** the sport among local young people. (prevent/promote) وصل لاعبو الغولف الى دول الخليج لينشطوا رياضة الغولف بين شباب هذه الدول.
- 2- Golf players will give the young people tips on how to improve their game. (true/false) (صح) سيعطي لاعبو الغولف الشباب النصائح ليحسنوا لعبهم.
- 3- Why golf players came to the Gulf States? لماذا جاء لاعبو الغولف الى دول الخليج؟  
- To promote the sport among local young people. To play a round or two with keen members of golf clubs and give them tips on how to improve their game. لينشطوا اللعبة بين الشباب، وللعبة جولة أو جولتين مع أعضاء نوادي الغولف المتحمسين لاعطائهم نصائح لتحسين لعبتهم.

**3**

- 1- Thousands of fish have died in the River Thames after a **traffic** accident. (explosion/traffic) الآلاف من السمك مات في نهر التايمز بعد حادث مروري.
- 2- A hole was made in the side of the tanker and at least 50% of the petrol poured. (true/false) حدث ثقب في جانب الشاحنة وانسكب ما لا يقل عن 50% من النفط.
- 3- Why did thousands of fish die in the River Thames? لماذا مات آلاف السمك في نهر التايمز؟  
- Because of a traffic accident on a bridge. أو بسبب حادث مروري على جسر. **OR**  
- Because of a hole was made in the side of the tanker on a bridge and at least 50% of the petrol poured. بسبب ثقب حصل في جانب شاحنة على جسر وانسكب ما لا يقل عن 50% من النفط.



4

- 1- A camel has been sold for \$ 150.000 in the UAE. (**true/false**)  
بيع جمل بـ \$ 150.000 في الامارات. (صح)
- 2- The new owner is a businessman from Qatar. (**true/false**)  
قطر. (خطأ) المالك الجديد رجل اعمال من
- 3- The camel isn't just an ordinary camel. It is top **quality**, racing camel.  
الجمل ليس مجرد جمل عادي. انه نوع راق، انه جمل للسباق.
- 4- Is camel racing very popular in the UAE?  
هل ان سباق الجمال مشهور في دولة الامارات؟  
- Yes, it is. نعم.
- 5- How many races has already the camel won?  
كم عدد السباقات التي فاز بها الجمل؟  
- It has already won more than fifty races. لقد فاز بأكثر من خمسين سباق حتى الآن.

### العناوين - Headlines

- **Headlines do not have the same grammar rules as sentences.**  
ليس للعناوين نفس القواعد النحوية كما في الجمل.

- **Complete the rules** . أكمل القواعد .

- 1- Headlines **do not** usually contain articles *a* or *the*.

لا تحتوي العناوين عادة على الاداتين *a/the*

**IRAQI STUDENT WINS SCIENCE PRIZE**

- 2- Verbs are usually in the **present** tense. تكون الأفعال عادة بصيغة المضارع.

**FOOTBALL TEAM GETS NEW MANAGER**

- 3- Many headlines do not have a **verb**. العديد من العناوين لا تحتوي على فعل.

**GREENPEACE ACTIVISTS IN BAGHDAD**

**Which of the rules go with each of the headlines on this page?**

أي القواعد تنطبق على كل عنوان من العناوين على هذه الصفحة؟

**Example:** SNAKE BITES BOY- rule 1, rule 2

**Answers:**

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| - Golf Professionals in the Gulf            | - rules 1+3 |
| - Camel Racing popular in the UAE           | - rule 3    |
| - 5,000 Litres of Petrol in River: Fish die | - rules 1+2 |
| - Top Price for Top Camel                   | - rules 1+3 |
| - Petrol Tanker in River Kills Fish         | - rules 1+2 |
| - Boy Bites Snake                           | - rules 1+2 |
| - Snake Bites Boy                           | - rules 1+2 |
| - Opportunity for Young Golf Players        | - rules 1+3 |



**Activity Book-Lesson 7**

**A- Write headlines for these two newspaper articles. Compare your headlines with others in the class.**

اكتب عناوين للمقالتين الصحفيتين. قارن عناوينك مع العناوين الأخرى في الصف.

**1**

A big road bridge has collapsed in Caracas, Venezuela. The bridge normally carries 50,000 cars every day, going in and out of the city, but it was empty at 4.30 p.m. yesterday when the disaster happened. Strong winds had made it impossible to cross the bridge. A spokesman at the scene said, 'It is a miracle that no one has been killed or injured. Let us thank God for that. Work will begin immediately to build a new bridge'.

**2**

Monkeys have been causing trouble in the Indian city of New Delhi for many years. They are famous for stealing food from people in the street. Now there is a new problem. The monkeys have decided that they like mobile phones. 'We don't know why they steal mobiles,' said policewoman Vidya Chakrabarti. 'Maybe they think they're food. If this happens to you, call your mobile number. When it rings, the monkeys are frightened and usually drop the phone'.

**Answers:**

1- Venezuelan Road Bridge Collapses – No One Killed or Injured.

2- Monkeys Steal Mobiles!

**B- Write an article of about 80 words to go with one of these headlines.** اكتب مقالة حوالي (٨٠) كلمة لتتناسب مع أحد هذين العناوين.

**ANIMALS ESCAPE FROM ZOO**

Scotland Zoo was put in lockdown after some of the animals got into the wrong enclosure while being moved.

News that the zoo had been closed, led to a frenzy of speculation that one of its dangerous animals had escaped and was on the loose. But after a short time staff at the zoo said they had got the situation under control. A call came to a police this morning from the zoo to let us know that some chimpanzees, that were in the process of being moved from one building to another, and in the process of this they have perhaps gone into an area of that building that they shouldn't have been in. The zoo is renowned as a specialist primate zoo and has a wide variety of monkeys and apes.

At no time were the public at risk, and no people or chimps were harmed during the incident, however it is part of our safety procedures that we close the zoo whilst such events are resolved. Investigations will commence internally and the zoo reopened.



## Activity Book - Lesson 8

**A- In pairs, try reading this aloud to your partner.**

بشكل ثنائي حاول قراءة هذه القطعة لزميلك.

a little south african boy had a very lucky escape yesterday sitting by a river near cape town mrs betty paton saw her three year old son max holding a snake and biting it I was terrified she said it was a poisonous snake but max had almost bitten the head off mrs paton took max to hospital but doctors said that the snake had not bitten him

**B- Now write out the paragraph with punctuation. When you have finished, compare your work to the same paragraph on Student's Book page 76.**

الآن اكتبها مع التنقيط. عندما تنتهي. قارن عملك الى نفس المقطع على صفحة (٧٦) من كتاب الطالب.

A little South African boy had a very lucky escape yesterday. Sitting by a river near Cape Town, Mrs Betty Paton saw her three-year-old son Max holding a snake and biting it. 'I was terrified,' she said. 'It was a poisonous snake, but Max had almost bitten the head off.' Mrs Paton took Max to hospital, but doctors said that the snake had not bitten him.

**C- Where do we use capital letters? Write C for capital letter or S for small letter in the boxes.**

اين نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة؟ اكتب (C) للحرف الكبير أو (S) للحروف الصغيرة في الصناديق.

Countries	[ C ]	Days of the week	[C]
Colours	[ S ]	First word of sentences	[C]
Months	[ C ]	E-mail addresses	[S]
Verbs	[ S ]	People's names	[C]
Place names	[ C ]	Nationality adjectives	[C]
Names of animals	[ S ]	Words for sports	[S]

**D- Write these sentences again with capital letters where necessary.**

اكتب هذه الجمل مرة أخرى بالحروف الكبيرة أينما كان ضروريا.

- the market in kingston is on thursday.  
- The market in Kingston is on Thursday.
- you know nabil is coming in november.  
- You know Nabil is coming in November.
- my lebanese friend mohamed al mansour loves football.  
- My Lebanes friend Mohamed Al Mansour loves football.



- 4- the tiger is now protected in parts of india.  
- The tiger is now protected in part of India.
- 5- my e-mail address is fareed. seeham@hotmail.com  
- My e-mail address is fareed.seeham@hotmail.com
- 6- does dana prefer green or blue?  
- Does Dana prefer green or blur?
- 7- i think the eshtar hotel is in al sa'adon street.  
- I think the Eshtar Hotel is in Al Sa'adon Street.
- 8- do they play basketball in mosul?  
- Do they play basketball in Mosul?

**E- Read the language box on the opposite page. Then put commas into the sentences.** اقرأ صندوق اللغة في الصفحة المقابلة. ثم ضع الفوارز داخل الجمل.

### الفوارز - Commas

- 1- Commas are used between items in a list. Befor the last item, we use and instead of a comma.  
- نستخدم الفوارز بين الفقرات في قائمة. قبل الفقرة الأخيرة، نحن نستخدم (and) بدلا من فارزة.  
- He plays tennis, table tennis, football, baseball and basketball.
- 2- Commas are used between two or more adjectives.  
- نستخدم الفوارز بين صفتين أو أكثر  
- He's wearing a long, black coat.
- 3- Commas are used in sentences that have clauses beginning with if and words such as When, While, As soon as. This clause is called subordinate. The comma separates the subordinate clause from the main clause.  
- نستخدم الفوارز في الجمل التي فيها عبارات تبدأ مع (if) وكلمات مثل (when/while/as soon as).  
تسمى هذه العبارة ثانوية أو تابعة. تفصل الفارزة العبارة الثانوية عن العبارة الرئيسية.  
- When they eat, lions use their sharp front teeth.  
- If you have finished the books, you must give them back to me.

- 1- Before we left, my aunt gave us tea and some little cakes.
- 2- Noura, Batool, Nisrin, Claudia and Aseel all want to come to the party.
- 3- If you want to visit Jarneel, Saeed will give you a lift.
- 4- When the police car stopped, the man started running away.
- 5- I take photos of flowers, trees, hills, the sea and the sky.
- 6- As she is interested in sport, videos about the Olympic Games would be a good present.
- 7- While we were waiting for the plane, we talked about our families.
- 8- As soon as you get to Baghdad, phone your cousin.



## Activity Book-Lesson 9

### Vocabulary : مفردات

journalist صحفي previous سابق interrupt (v.) يقاطع / يعترض

**D- Listen to Farida doing some interviews. Does she interrupt politely or not? Tick the correct box.**

استمع الى فريدة وهي تجري بعض المقابلات. هل هي تقاطع بشكل مؤدب أم لا؟

### Tapescript:

#### Interview 1

**Actor:** ... at the end of my last film. Then I moved to London, and I did some work on television. That was interesting, but not the same as making films. In London, I met Angela, and we worked together...

**Farida:** Oh, yes. I'm sorry, but is that Angela Dixon - your wife?

**Actor:** Yes, that's right. She was in the same TV film as me. It was called 'The End of the Holiday' and we thought it was...

#### Interview 2

**Architect:** ... lots of small buildings. You know it was difficult, as a woman, to get good work as an architect. Then in 1992, I did a job in Salzburg on a big office...

**Farida:** I'm sorry. Is that Salzburg in Austria?

**Architect:** Yes, in Austria. It's a really beautiful little town, with a fantastic historic...

#### Interview 3

**Tennis star:** ... one of my best matches. I beat Roger Federman in three sets. Then in 2002, I had my injury and I had to take a year...

**Farida:** What injury?

**Tennis star:** Sorry?

**Farida:** I said, What injury?

**Tennis star:** Oh, well, you know, I broke my ankle in the Australian Open, and it took a long...

Interview 1: politely    Interview 2: politely    Interview 3: politely



F- Listen to these two questions. What do you notice about the intonation? استمع الى هذين السؤالين. ماذا تلاحظ حول ارتفاع وانخفاض النغمة.

1- Are you leaving today? (A Yes/No question)

2- When are you leaving? (A Wh- question)

Now listen and repeat.

3- Is that your brother?

4- Who's that?

5- Do you go swimming at the weekend?

6- When do you go swimming?

7- Did Fuad go to Egypt last week?

8- Where did his brother go?

9- Are you cooking chicken for lunch?

10- What are you making for lunch?

(يلاحظ الطالب ان النغمة (intonation) ترتفع مع اسئلة Yes/No وتنخفض مع اسئلة wh)

### Activity Book-Lesson 10

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

designer مصمم

sub-editor نائب رئيس تحرير

font نوع الحروف الطباعية

contribute يساهم

editor رئيس تحرير

committee لجنة

A- Read the beginning of two articles from a class magazine.

اقرأ بدايات مقاليتين من مجلة لصف مدرسي

NEW BUILDING FOR SCIENCE DEPARTMENT المبنى الجديد لقسم العلوم	A HOLIDAY IN MALAYSIA عطلة في ماليزيا
The Head Teacher said yesterday that the government had given her money to build a new Science Department. She was delighted with the news and said that it would make a big difference to Science teaching in the school. She added that work would begin in October.	Noura- Hussein has told Top Class magazine all about her holiday in Malaysia earlier this year. What is special about Malaysia? Noura: Actually, there are lots of special things about it. First of all, there's the sea. It's fantastic! The beaches are beautiful, with white sand and tall palm trees.



**B- To start a school magazine, you need to set up a committee of three students. Read what they will have to do. Then think of three students in the class who will do these jobs well.**

للبدا بمجلة مدرسة، تحتاج لتأليف لجنة من ثلاث طلاب. اقرأ ماعليهم فعله مستقبلا. ثم فكر بثلاث طلاب من الصف للقيام بهذا العمل بشكل جيد.

**The editor** is the boss or manager. The editor should make a list of articles and ask different students in the class to write them. Students can also offer to contribute to the magazine. The editor chooses the best articles to use in the magazine.

**رئيس التحرير** هو الرئيس أو المدير. عليه أن يكون قائمة مقالات ويطلب من مختلف الطلاب في الصف كتابتها. يمكن للطلاب أيضا عرض المساهمة في المجلة. يختار رئيس التحرير أفضل المقالات لنشرها في المجلة.

**The sub-editor** checks the English in the articles - spelling, grammar and punctuation. The sub-editor can also change some words to improve the articles.

**نائب رئيس التحرير**، يفحص اللغة الانكليزية في المقالات - الاملاء، النحو والتنقيط. يمكنه أيضا أن يغير بعض الكلمات لتحسين المقالات.

**The designer** cuts up the articles and chooses the font and the pictures to fit on the page.

**المصمم**، يقطع المقالات ويختار نوع الحروف الطباعية والصور لتكون مناسبة على الصفحة.

### نصيحة للكتابة - Writing tip

\* For short interviews, use reported speech. لاجراء مقابلة قصيرة، استخدم الكلام غير المباشر.  
- We asked Mrs Malak where her office was. She told us it was near the airport.

\* For long interviews, use direct speech. لاجراء مقابلة طويلة، استخدم الكلام المباشر.

**Interviewer:** How long have been playing the guitar?

**Abdullah:** About five years.

**Interviewer:** Where do you practise?

**Abdullah:** Usually at home.

اطلب النسخة الاصلية من مكتب الشمس حصرا

موبايل / ٠٧٩٠١٧٥٣٤٦١ / ٠٧٨٠٥٠٣٠٩٤٢



**Student Book - Revision 1****At the museum - في المتحف****Vocabulary : مفردات**

receptionist موظف استقبال      life guard سباح الانقاذ      حارس

- ★ Waleed visited the National Museum of Iraq in Baghdad with his teacher and a group from his school. Listen to the museum guide. Tick the things she asked or told them to do.

زار وليد المتحف الوطني العراقي في بغداد مع مدرسه ومجموعة من الطلبة. استمع الى مرشدة المتحف. أشر الأشياء التي طلبتها منهم أو أخبرتهم أن يفعلوها.

**Tapescript:**

Good morning, boys and girls. Welcome to the National Museum of Iraq. My name is Mrs Al-Hamza, and I'm your guide today. First of all, I must give you a few rules. These are important, so please listen carefully. This is a very big museum, and it's easy to get lost in it. So don't walk away from the group - stay together at all times. You're allowed to talk in the museum - but not loudly please. Last year, one school group started to sing songs! Please don't do that! You have three worksheets, you must fill those in as we go round - not at the end of the tour. Eating and drinking is not allowed in the museum. You can take photos, but not with flash. I have your tickets, so you don't need to stop at the ticket office. Any questions? No? Good. Follow me, and I hope you enjoy the museum.

- 1- She asked us to listen carefully. (✓)
- 2- She told us to sit down and listen to her.
- 3- She told us to leave our bags outside.
- 4- She told us to stay together. (✓)
- 5- She asked us not to touch the things in the museum.
- 6- She asked us not to talk loudly. (✓)
- 7- She asked us to sing a song.
- 8- She told us to fill in our worksheets. (✓)
- 9- She told us not to eat or drink in the museum. (✓)
- 10- She asked us not to take photos with flash. (✓)
- 11- She asked us to walk slowly in the museum.
- 12- She told us to get our tickets at the ticket office.



## Reporting commands and requests:

### الأوامر والرجاء في الكلام غير المباشر

\* Use **tell** to report commands and **ask** to report requests.

\* استخدم ( **tell** ) للأوامر غير المباشرة و ( **ask** ) للرجاء غير المباشر.

'Get out of the car.'

The policeman **told** me to get out of the car.

'Could you help with the washing-up?'

My sister **asked** me to help her with the washing-up.

## ★ Reported commands and requests: الأوامر والرجاء في الكلام غير المباشر

### الشكل - Form

\* استخدم (مصدر + to + (not) + مفعول به + tell/ask):

- "Get off the grass". He told us to get off the grass.
  - "Do the washing-up now". She told him to do the washing-up.
  - "Please don't stay out too long". She asked me not to stay out too long.
- لاحظ:** ان الفعل (tell) يتبع دائما بواسطة مفعول به مباشر.

- You told **me** that you wouldn't be late.
- I told **Salim** that the party was on Saturday.

## Activity Book - Revision 1

**A- Match the sentences to the people. Then write them as reported speech.** صل الجمل الى الأشخاص. ثم اكتبها ككلام غير مباشر.

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 1- ( Can you come to the shops with me?)               | → the girl         |
| 2- ( Could you spell the street name, please?)         | → the taxi driver  |
| 3- ( Don't swim at the north end of the beach.)        | → the life guard   |
| 4- ( Keep your eye on the ball.)                       | → the tennis coach |
| 5- (Please use the stairs because the lift is broken.) | → the receptionist |
| 6- (Show me your driving licence.)                     | → the policeman    |
| 7- ( Stand by the tree and smile.)                     | → the photographer |
| 8- (Take three pills a day for two weeks.)             | → the doctor       |

### Example:

The doctor told me to take three pills a day for two weeks.

- 1- The police officer told me to show him my driving licence.



- 2- The photographer asked me to stand by the tree and smile. **7**
- 3- The lifeguard told me not to swim at the north end of the beach. **3**
- 4- My little sister asked me to go to the shops with her. **1**
- 5- The tennis coach told me to keep my eye on the ball. **4**
- 6- The hotel receptionist asked me to use the stairs because the lift was broken. **5**
- 7- The taxi driver asked me to spell the street name. **2**

**B- Complete the sentences with nouns from the box. Make them plural if necessary.** أكمل الجمل مع الأسماء من الصندوق. اجعلها بصيغة الجمع إن كان ضرورياً

paper glass coffee time hair exercise

- 1- A cola and two coffees, please. (كوب قهوة) [C] – (countable – معدود)
- 2- Careful! There's broken glass on the floor. (زجاج) [U] – (uncountable – غير معدود)
- 3- He phoned ten times in one day (مرات) [C]
- 4- I just haven't got time to help you today. (وقت) [U]
- 5- I'd love a glass of orange juice. (قدح) [C]
- 6- Physical exercise is good for the body and the mind. (تمرين بدني) [U]
- 7- The exercises in this unit are more difficult than usual. (تمارين الكتاب) [C]
- 8- The printer has run out of paper. (ورق) [U]
- 9- There's a hair on your jacket. Apart from that, you look perfect! (شعرة) [C]
- 10- There's an interesting article in today's paper (جريدة) [C]
- 11- They grow a lot of coffee in Brazil. (قهوة/بن) [U]
- 12- Your hair will look lovely with Kreemy conditioner. (شعر) [U]

**C- Read the language box. Then write (C) for countable or (U) for uncountable about the nouns in Exercise (B).**

اقرأ صندوق اللغة. ثم أكتب (C) للأسماء المعدودة أو (U) للأسماء غير المعدودة في تمرين (B).

### Countable and uncountable nouns

#### الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

\* Some nouns are countable and uncountable—but with different meanings. بعض الأسماء تكون معدودة وغير معدودة لكن بمعاني مختلفة.

- There's a lot of room in the back of my car. (غير معدود، تعني مساحة أو مكان)
- Our flat has five rooms. (معدود، تعني غرف)



\* يلاحظ الطالب الكلمات التالية التي يمكن أن تسبب تشويش أو أرباك له وتحتسب معدودة وغير معدودة حسب معناها في الجملة:

Countable Nouns أسماء معدودة	Uncountable Nouns أسماء غير معدودة
1- times مرات	1- time وقت
2- exercises تمارين/مناورات	2- exercise تمرين بدني
3- spaces فراغات	3- space مدة
4- senses معاني	4- sense شعور
5- glasses أقذاح	5- glass زجاج
6- papers صحف	6- paper ورق

### Activity Book-Test 1

**A- These statements about a tennis player are wrong. Listen to a radio interview with her. Cross out the wrong word or words and note the correction as in the example. After you have listened to the interview, write correct statements.**

هذه جمل خطأ عن لاعبة كرة تنس. استمع الى مقابلة لها في الراديو. اشطب الكلمة أو الكلمات الخطأ ولاحظ التصحيح كما في المثال. بعد استماعك الى المقابلة، أكتب الجمل الصحيحة.

### Tapescript

**Brian:** My name's Brian Robertson. Today I'm speaking to the tennis player, Melissa Duncan. Hello, Melissa.

**Melissa:** Hi!

**Brian:** How old are you, Melissa?

**Melissa:** I'm nineteen. Well, almost twenty, actually.

**Brian:** Are you at university?

**Melissa:** No. I started at Manchester University last year, but I couldn't study and do my tennis. I didn't have the time for both.

**Brian:** So now you're a professional tennis player?

**Melissa:** That's right. I've been professional for fourteen months.

**Brian:** Is your career going well?

**Melissa:** Yes, quite well. I've won two tournaments.

**Brian:** In England?

**Melissa:** One in England, and one in Australia.

**Brian:** Well done!

**Melissa:** So now I'm number 32 in England, and number 413 in the world.

**Brian:** That's pretty good.

**Melissa:** Thank you.



**Brian:** Does your family play tennis?

**Melissa:** Well, my parents play a bit. But they're not very good. Sorry, Mum, sorry, Dad!

**Brian:** So how did you learn to play?

**Melissa:** I had a fantastic sports teacher at school - Mrs Murphy. She saw that I was good, and advised me to get a tennis coach.

**Brian:** How old were you at that time?

**Melissa:** I was thirteen.

**Brian:** What did your parents say about it?

**Melissa:** They were great! They paid for a tennis coach for three years.

**Brian:** And what did you do after that?

**Melissa:** Then I got money from the government for coaching. Twenty young tennis players each year get this money.

**Brian:** Well, all the best this year Melissa, and thank you for talking to us.

**Melissa:** You're welcome.

- 1- Melissa is at Manchester University.      - She was at Manchester University.
- 2- She is twenty.      - She is nineteen.
- 3- She plays tennis in her spare time.  
- She is professional/She is a professional player.
- 4- She's been a professional for almost a year.  
- She's been a professional for fourteen months.
- 5- She has won a lot of tournaments.      - She has won two tournaments.
- 6- She is now number 32 in the world.  
- She is now number 413 in the world./She is now number 32 in England.
- 7- Her parents are brilliant tennis players.  
- Her parents are not very good tennis players.
- 8- Melissa's sports teacher advised her to give up.  
- Melissa's sports teacher advised her to get a tennis coach.
- 9- Her parents couldn't afford a coach for Melissa.  
- Her parents paid for a coach for three years.
- 10- The government gave her money for her university studies.  
- The government gave her money for coaching.

**B- Write the interviewer's questions. اكتب أسئلة المقابلة**

- 1- He asked her how old she was.      - How old are you?
- 2- He asked her whether she was at university.      - Are you at university?
- 3- He asked if her career was going well.      - Is your career going well?
- 4- He asked her whether her family played tennis.  
- Does your family play tennis?
- 5- He asked her how she had learnt to play.      - How did you learn to play?
- 6- He asked her what her parents had said about it.  
- What did your parents say about it?



**C- Here are some questions and answers from a later part of the interview. Write them as reported speech.**

هذه بعض الأسئلة والأجوبة من الجزء الأخير للمقابلة. اكتبها كلام غير مباشر.

**1- Brian:** Did you want to be a professional tennis player?

**Melissa:** At the age of thirteen, I didn't really think about it.

He asked her *Whether she had wanted to be a professional tennis player.*

She said that *at the age of thirteen, she hadn't really thought about it.*

**2- Brian:** Do you prefer singles or doubles?

**Melissa:** I like playing both.

He asked her *if she preferred (playing) singles or doubles.*

She said that *she liked playing both.*

**3- Brian:** When is your next tournament?

**Melissa:** I'm playing in the UK Under-21s in April.

He asked her *when her next tournament was.*

She said that *she was playing in the UK Under-21s in April.*

**4- Brian:** What are your chances of success in that?

**Melissa:** I hope to come in the top four.

He asked her *what her chances of success in that were.*

She said that *she hoped to come in the top four.*

**5- Brian:** When do you practise?

**Melissa:** I do a couple of hours every morning.

He asked her *when she practised.*

She said that *she did a couple of hours every morning.*

**6- Brian:** Have you played any other sports?

**Melissa:** At school, I tried swimming and running.

He asked her *if/whether she had played any other sports.*

She said that *at school she had tried swimming and running.*

**7- Brian:** Have you got a special ambition?

**Melissa:** I want to win Wimbledon, of course!

He asked her *if she had any special ambition.*

She said that *she wanted to win Wimbledon, (of course).*

**D- Words from newspapers, film and TV. Choose words from the box to complete the sentences.** كلمات من صحف، فيلم وتلفاز. اختر كلمات من الصندوق لإكمال الجمل.

article	cartoon	producer	designer	headline
historical	lifestyle	news	psychological	realistic
sub-editor	trailer			

**1- I don't like these lifestyle programmes - cooking, gardening and so on.**

**2- Disney makes lots of cartoon films - Mickey Mouse, Donald Duck, Finding Nemo and so on.**



**B- Which six points about satellite TV can you find in the article? Tick the points below.** ماهي النقاط الستة حول الاقمار الصناعية التي يمكنك أن تجدها في المقالة؟ أشر النقاط أدناه.

- 1- In some ways, satellite TV is better than the older system. (✓)
- 2- The Russians developed the first communication satellites.
- 3- People have more TV stations to choose from. (✓)
- 4- Satellite TV is good for language students. (✓)
- 5- The first satellites were no good for TV. (✓)
- 6- There have been communication satellites for more than 40 years. (✓)
- 7- This technology is rather expensive for ordinary people.
- 8- Satellite dishes don't look very nice on houses.
- 9- You can receive stations even if you live a long way from cities. (✓)
- 10- The quality of satellite pictures is not always good.

★ Write a paragraph about "Satellite in our life". Write about (80-100)

words. أكتب مقطعاً حول "الستلايت في حياتنا". أكتب حوالي (٨٠ - ١٠٠) كلمة. الانشاء مطلوب في الامتحانات.

### Satellite in our life

Satellite TV has both entertaining and educative value. With satellites, we can watch the latest news. They help us know what is happening in the farthest corner in the world. We can also receive TV programmers in the middle of the desert, in the mountains, or on small, faraway islands. We can watch movies, dramas, music and sports. Besides, they are used for distance learning. They widen our knowledge, help us to be acquainted with the cultures of different countries.

We conclude that satellites have changed the way we watch television. They have opened the world and brought people close together.

### الستلايت (الاقمار الصناعية) في حياتنا

للقنوات الفضائية كلا التسلية والقيم التعليمية. بواسطة الاقمار الصناعية، يمكننا مشاهدة اخر الاخبار. انها تساعدنا في معرفة ماذا يحدث في ابعد زاوية في العالم. يمكننا ايضا استقبال برامج تلفزيونية في وسط الصحراء، في الجبال، او على جزيرة صغير وبعيدة. يمكننا مشاهدة افلام، مسرحيات، موسيقى، واقلام رياضية. اضافة الى انها تستخدم للتعلم عن بعد. انها توسع معارفنا، تساعدنا لنكون مطلعين على ثقافات مختلف الدول. نخلص القول ان الاقمار الصناعية قد غيرت طريقة مشاهدتنا للتلفزيون انها فتحت العالم وجعلت الناس مقربين من بعضهم البعض.

### Activity Book- Further Practice 1

**A- Steve is on a school trip to Barcelona in Spain. He makes a lot of mistakes in spelling, punctuation and grammar. Underline his mistakes, and write out his letter correctly. (You should find more than 40 mistakes!) Use your copybook.**

يقوم ستيف برحلة مدرسية الى برشلونة في اسبانيا. انه يرتكب الكثير من الاخطاء في التهجئة، التنقيط والنحو. ضع خطأ تحت أخطائه، ثم اكتب رسالته بشكل صحيح. (عليك أن تجد أكثر من ٤٠ خطأ).



**Answer:**

**Hotel Delfino**  
**Avenida de los Reyes**  
**Barcelona, 44120**  
**Espana**

**Dear mum and dad,**

**We're** having a **great** time here in **spain**. The **weather** is fantastic- the sun is shining and **it's** not too **windy**. **Barcelona** is a really nice city. There's an amazing market in the **middle** of the city, with the **musicians** and **restaurants** and things like that.

**Our teacher** took us to an art **gallery** this morning. It **wasn't** bad, **but** we **were** talking **a lot** and the guide told us to be quiet. I thought the paintings were **really** good.

**There are a lot** of **interesting** buildings in the city- old **churches** and houses, etc. I think we're going to see some of them **tomorrow**.

**My friend Terry** had an **accident** yesterday. **We were** playing football on the **beach** and he cut his toe on a **piece** of glass. **I can't** phone you because my mobile **doesn't** work in **spain**. **Anyway**, it would be **extremely** expensive. **The** phone in the hotel room is no good- you can only call **reception**.

**Lots of love to all of you,**

**Steve**

**Student Book-Further Practice 2**

**The doctor advised me to stay in bed**

نصحتني الطبيب أن أبقى في الفراش

**Vocabulary : مفردات**

remind (v.) يذكر

consequently وهكذا/وبناء على ذلك

reminder (n.) المذكر/المذكورة

Nobel Prize جائزة نوبل

★ Read the speech bubbles and answer the questions below.

اقرأ الأحاديث ثم أجب على الأسئلة أدناه.

1- Who **advised** someone to do something?

→ Fuad

2- Who **offered** to do something?

→ Adnan



- 3- Who **promised** to do something? → Jaber
- 4- Who **reminded** someone to do something? → Salwa
- 5- Who **suggested** doing something? → Samira
- 6- Who **warned** someone about something? → Katie

	Pattern of sentences	
advise ينصح	+ object	+ to + infinitive
remind يذكر	+ object	+ to + infinitive
offer يعرض	-	+ to + infinitive
promise يوعد	-	+ to + infinitive
warn يحذر	+ object	+ not to + infinitive
suggest يقترح	-	+ verb-ing

تحويل الكلام المباشر الى غير مباشر بواسطة أفعال أخرى - Reporting with other verbs

### الشكل - Form

#### ★ suggest + v.ing:

- "let's go to the beach". (مباشر)

He **suggested** going to the beach. (غير مباشر)

#### ★ advise, offer, promise + (not) to + مصدر

- "I don't think you should swim today".

She **advised** us not to swim that day.

- "shall I clean the windows?"

He **offered** to clean the windows.

- "I will be careful with your car, I promise".

He **promised** to be careful with my car.

#### ★ warn, remind + person + (not) to + مصدر

- "Don't forget to call your uncle".

She **reminded** us to call our uncle.

- "Don't park near the restaurant".

He **warned** us not to park near the restaurant.

#### ★ Work in groups. Take turns doing these things:

بشكل مجموعات خذوا أدواركم بعمل هذه الأشياء.

Make a promise.

Give a warning.

Make a suggestion.

Give a reminder.

Make an offer.

Give advice.



**Examples:**

1. Make a promise: I'll return your book back to you as I finish it.
2. Make a suggestion: Let's go to the cinema tonight.
3. Make an offer: Shall I get breakfast for all of you.
4. Give a warning: Don't swim in that river, it's dirty.
5. Give a reminder: Dad don't forget my birthday's party tonight.
6. Give advice: You ought to learn languages if you want to be a tour guide.

**Activity Book- Further Practice 2**

**A- Read each sentence and match it to a phrase in the box. Underline the words that tell you what kind of sentence it is. Write the number of the phrase.**

اقرأ كل جملة ثم صلها الى عبارة في الصندوق. ضع خطأ تحت الكلمات التي تخبرك أي نوع من الجملة هي. أكتب رقم العبارة.

- |                        |                    |                     |
|------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1- a promise وعد       | 3- an offer عرض    | 5- a reminder تذكير |
| 2- a suggestion اقتراح | 4- a warning تحذير | 6- advice نصيحة     |

1- I wouldn't swim there if I were you.

[4] - a warning تحذير

2- You should look after your teeth.

[6] - advice نصيحة

3- How about going to the cinema?

[2] - a suggestion اقتراح

4- Don't walk on the grass!

[4] - a warning تحذير

5- Remember to bring your diary.

[5] - a reminder تذكير

6- We'll do the washing-up.

[3] - an offer عرض

7- I promise to phone you tonight.

[1] - a promise وعد

8- You ought to see that film. It's fantastic!

[6] - advice نصيحة

9- I will definitely send you a postcard.

[1] - a promise وعد

10- Would you like me to make some tea?

[3] - an offer عرض

11- Be careful! There might be a snake in the grass. [4] - a warning تحذير

**B- Change these reported statements into direct speech.**

غير الجمل غير المباشرة الى كلام مباشر. (تحويل الكلام المباشر الى غير مباشر بواسطة أفعال أخرى)

1- Martin promised to pay the money back within a week.

- "I'll pay the money back within a week. I promise."

2- Ali reminded me to watch the international match on TV.

- "Don't forget to watch the internation match on TV."



- 3- My brother offered to stay at home and look after the children.  
 - "Would you like me to stay at home and look after the children." Or  
 "I'll stay at home and look after the children."

- 4- Farida suggested getting up early and finishing the job in the morning.  
 - "Let's get up early and finish the job in the morning." Or  
 "How about getting up early and finishing the job in the morning?"

- 5- The doctor advised me to drink a lot more water.

- "You should drink a lot more water." Or

"You ought to drink a lot more water."

- 6- Your mother warned us about the high prices in that shop.

- "Don't go to that shop. It has very high prices." Or

"I wouldn't go to that shop if I were you. It has very high prices."

**C- Link the sentences in these two lists by using words and phrases from the box.** صل الجمل بالقائمتين باستخدام الكلمات والعبارات من الصندوق.

consequently بناء على ذلك  
 because of this بسبب هذا

for this reason لهذا السبب  
 so وهكذا/أيضا/الى الحد

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1- English is a useful international language.    | a- He lost his place in the team.              |
| 2- We're going to be late.                        | b- Don't wait for us.                          |
| 3- Steel is a strong metal and it's fairly cheap. | c- It is taught in schools all over the world. |
| 4- The party was really boring.                   | d- It is used a lot in building.               |
| 5- Dr Ahmed Zuwail is a great scientist.          | e- Very few people live there.                 |
| 6- The desert is a very difficult environment.    | f- We left.                                    |
| 7- He didn't get a goal the whole season.         | g- He won the Nobel Prize in 2005.             |

- 1- English is a useful international language. **For this reason, it is taught in schools all over the world.**
- 2- We're going to be late, **so don't wait for us.**
- 3- Steel is a strong metal and it's fairly cheap. **Because of this/For this reason, it is used a lot in building.**
- 4- The party was really boring, **so we left.**
- 5- Dr Ahmed Zuwail is a great scientist. **Consequently, he won the Nobel Prize in 2005.**
- 6- The desert is a very difficult environment. **For this reason/ Because of this, very few people live there.**
- 7- He didn't get a goal the whole season. **Consequently, he lost his place in the team.**



## UNIT SEVEN

### Lesson -1-

**All the rooms are made of ice** كل الغرف مصنوعة من الجليد

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

Sweden السويد

Arctic المناطق القطب الشمالي

construct يبني/ينشئ

sled مزلجة

rebuild يعيد بناء

circle دائرة

melt يذوب

Lapland اسم مدينة في السويد

reopen يعيد فتح

tonne طن

reindeer حيوان الرنة

★ Read the first text in the brochure quickly and find answers to the questions. اقرأ النص الأول في المنشور بسرعة ثم جد اجابات الأسئلة.

Ice Tours	رحلات الجليد
<p><b>Come to Sweden's Ice Hotel for a different kind of holiday! All the rooms are made of ice. All the cold drinks are served in glasses made of ice!</b></p> <p><i>The Ice Hotel was opened for the first time in 1989 in the village of Jukkasjarvi, 200 kilometres north of the Arctic Circle. It is built totally from snow and ice. Thousands of tonnes of snow and ice are used to construct it and every year it is rebuilt.</i></p> <p><i>Ice is brought from the River Torne and is stored until the weather is right for building to begin. In November, when there is no sunlight at all, building work is started. The hotel is ready by the middle of December and the doors are opened to guests. The last guests leave in April, the Ice Hotel melts and the water goes back to the River Torne.</i></p>	<p>تعال الى فندق الجليد السويدي، تعال الى نوع مختلف من رحلات العطل! جميع الغرف بنيت من الجليد. جميع المشروبات الباردة تقدم في أقداح مصنوعة من الجليد!</p> <p>افتتح فندق الجليد لأول مرة عام ١٩٨٩ في قرية جوكاسجارفي، تقع ٢٠٠ كم شمال الدائرة القطبية الشمالية. لقد بني كلياً من الثلج والجليد. آلاف الأطنان من الثلج والجليد استخدمت لتشييده ويعاد بناءه كل سنة.</p> <p>يتم جلب الجليد من نهر تورن ويخزن حتى يكون الجو مناسباً للبناء ليبدأ في شهر تشرين ثاني، يبدأ البناء عندما لاتوجد أشعة الشمس نهائياً.. يكون الفندق جاهزاً عند منتصف شهر كانون أول وتفتح الأبواب للضيوف. يغادر آخر الضيوف في شهر نيسان، حيث يذوب الفندق الجليدي ويذهب الماء عائداً الى نهر تورن.</p>

1- What is the hotel made of? من أي شيء بني الفندق؟

- It is made of ice.

2- Why is it rebuilt every year? لماذا يعاد بناءه كل سنة؟

- The ice melts.

3- In which month is the hotel reopened every year? في أي شهر يعاد فتح الفندق كل سنة؟

- It is reopened in December.



★ Complete the sentences on page 84 with the words in the box. Then listen and check your answers.

أكمل الجمل على صفحة ٨٤ بكلمات من الصندوق. ثم استمع وتحقق من إجاباتك.

catch	desert	drinks	drive
mountains	restaurant	traditional	warm

HIGHLIGHTS OF YOUR 3-DAY HOLIDAY IN LAPLAND	تسليط الضوء على عطلة لك لثلاثة أيام في مقاطعة لابلاند (السويد)
<b>Day 1</b> When you arrive, you will be served cold ① <b>drinks</b> in glasses made of ice. You will be shown to your rooms and given reindeer skins and a ② <b>warm</b> sleeping bag.	<b>اليوم الأول:</b> عندما تصلون، ستقدم لكم مشروبات باردة بأقداح مصنوعة من الجليد. ستعرض عليكم غرفكم وتعطى لكم جلود حيوان الرنة وكيس نوم دافئ.
<b>Day 2</b> You will be taken on a reindeer sled through the cold ③ <b>desert</b> of Lapland. You will be shown how to ④ <b>catch</b> a reindeer with a rope. Dinner will be served to you in a ⑤ <b>traditional</b> Lapland home.	<b>اليوم الثاني:</b> ستنتقل على مزلجة يجرها حيوان الرنة خلال صحراء باردة لمقاطعة لابلاند. سيعرض لكم كيف تمسك حيوان الرنة بواسطة حبل. سيقدم العشاء في بيت تقليدي لمقاطعة لابلاند.
<b>Day 3</b> You will be driven on a dog sled to the ⑥ <b>mountains</b> . You will be taught how to ⑦ <b>drive</b> sled dogs yourselves. You will be served dinner at the Ice Hotel, in the coolest ⑧ <b>restaurant</b> in the world.	<b>اليوم الثالث:</b> ستنتقل بواسطة مزلجة تجرها كلاب إلى الجبال. ستعلم كيف تقود كلاب المزلجة بنفسك. سيقدم لك العشاء في الفندق الجليدي، في المطعم الأكثر برودة في العالم.

★ Underline all the passive verbs in both texts.

ضع خطاً تحت جميع أفعال المبني للمجهول في كلا النصين.

**Answers:**

Text 1	Text 2	Text 1	Text 2
was opened	will be served	is brought	will be shown
is built	will be shown	is stored	will be served
are used	(will be) given	is started	will be driven
is rebuilt	will be taken	are opened	will be taught
			will be served



★ Complete the rules about forming the passive.

أكمل القواعد حول تكوين المبني للمجهول

**The passive: present simple, past simple, future.**

المبني للمجهول بصيغة المضارع البسيط، الماضي البسيط، المستقبل

- The passive is formed with the verb **be** and the past participle.  
يتكون المبني للمجهول مع (الصيغة الثالثة للفعل + **be** →).
- The present simple passive is formed with **am/is/ are** and the past participle.  
يتكون المبني للمجهول بصيغة المضارع البسيط مع (الصيغة الثالثة للفعل + **am/is/are** →).
- The past simple passive is formed with **was/ were** and the past participle.  
يتكون المبني للمجهول بصيغة الماضي البسيط مع (الصيغة الثالثة للفعل + **was/were** →).
- The future passive is formed with **will be** and the past participle.  
يتكون المبني للمجهول بصيغة المستقبل مع (الصيغة الثالثة للفعل + **will be** →).

**The passive للمجهول**

**الشكل - Form**

كون شكل المبني للمجهول مع [ **verb (be) + p.p.** الصيغة الثالثة للفعل ] :

<b>Present simple</b>	<b>am/are/is</b>	
<b>Present continuous</b>	<b>am/ are/is + being</b>	
<b>Past simple</b>	<b>was/were</b>	
<b>Past continuous</b>	<b>was/were + being</b>	<b>helped</b>
<b>Present perfect simple</b>	<b>have/has + been</b>	
<b>Future simple</b>	<b>will + be</b>	
<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>to be</b>	
<b>Infinitive after modals</b>	<b>be</b>	

**الاستخدام - Use**

★ استخدم المبني للمجهول عندما يكون الشخص الذي قام بالفعل غير معروف أو غير مهم، مثل:

- When **will** we **be** told the results? (مستقبل)
- A lot of new flats **are being** built at the moment. (مضارع مستمر)
- The room **was being** cleaned, so I waited outside. (ماضي مستمر)
- The thief **has already been** caught. (مضارع تام)
- This needs **to be** done immediately. (مصدر)
- Smoking **should be** stopped completely. (مصدر بعد فعل مودال)

★ عندما تريد القول من الذي تسبب أو ما الذي تسبب بالفعل. استخدم (by):

- This story was written by a girl at my school. (ماضي بسيط)
- This beach is owned by the hotel. (مضارع بسيط)



**Activity Book-Lesson 1****A- Write the verbs in brackets in the past simple passive.**

اكتب الأفعال بين الأقواس بصيغة المبني للمجهول الماضي البسيط.

Last year, I ① (invite) **was invited** by some friends to go on holiday with them in Thailand. It was the kind of holiday where everything ② (arrange) **was arranged** by the tour company. We ③ (meet) **were met** at Bangkok Airport and we ④ (take) **were taken** to a hotel with a beautiful roof garden. The next day, we ⑤ (pick up) **were picked up** by bus from the hotel and we ⑥ (drive) **were driven** to the Grand Palace. After that, we ⑦ (give) **were given** a boat tour of the canals. It was fantastic. Every day we ⑧ (serve) **were served** delicious food in the hotel. After a week in Bangkok, we ⑨ (fly) **were flown** to the island of Samui to enjoy a few days at the beach.

★ **Write sentences in the passive. Choose the correct tense each time. For future time, use will.**

اكتب الجمل بصيغة المبني للمجهول. اختر الصيغة الصحيحة كل مرة. لزمّن المستقبل، استخدم will.

- 1- Where / best dates / grow? - **Where are the best dates grown?**
- 2- A lot of cars / make / in Japan nowadays.  
- **A lot of cars are made in Japan nowadays.**
- 3- Where / party / hold / next time? - **Where will the party be held next time?**
- 4- I'm afraid / room / not clean / yesterday.  
- **I'm afraid the room was not cleaned yesterday.**
- 5- I / often / tell / that I look older than eighteen.  
- **I'm often told that I look older than eighteen.**
- 6- These days our rubbish / always collect / on Monday mornings.  
- **These days our rubbish is always collected on Monday mornings.**
- 7- The swimming pool/repair / next month.  
- **The swimming pool will be repaired next month.**
- 8- Their car / steal/two weeks ago. - **Their car was stolen two weeks ago.**
- 9- Oranges / not grow / in Britain. It's not hot enough.  
- **Oranges are not grown in Britain. It's not hot enough.**
- 10- What / we / give for homework yesterday? I didn't write it down.  
- **What were we given for homework yesterday? I didn't write it down.**



## Activity Book-Lesson 2

## Opposites: معاكسات

correct يصحح	X	incorrect
attractive جذاب	X	unattractive
decisive حاسم	X	indecisive
dependent تابع	X	independent
expensive غال	X	inexpensive
fashionable أنيق	X	unfashionable
mature ناضج	X	immature

## Opposites: معاكسات

moral اخلاقي	X	immoral
harmless غير مؤذي	X	harmful
powerless ضعيف	X	powerful
thoughtless عديم التفكير	X	thoughtful
practical عملي	X	impractical
sensitive حساس	X	insensitive

## A- Word building: What does the prefix (re) mean?

بناء الكلمة: ماذا تعني البادئة (re-)?

**Example:** - Every year it is **re**built. كل سنة يعاد بناءه.

## B- Read the language box. اقرأ صندوق اللغة.

## Suffixes: less (بدون) , full (كامل / ممتلئ)

- \* The suffix **less** usually has the meaning without.  
اللاحقة (less) عادة لها معنى (بدون).
- \* The suffix **ful** often has the opposite meaning: useless and useful are opposites, for example.  
اللاحقة (ful) لها معنى معاكس لعنى اللاحقة (less)، مثل: مفيد useless X بلا فائدة.
- \* But be careful! A homeless person is someone without a home; but the word homeful does not exist.  
لكن كن منتهبه الى (homeless) وتعني شخص ما بلا سكن. لكن كلمة (homeful) هي غير موجودة.

Now write the adjectives to complete these sentences. Then write the opposites of the adjectives. الآن اكتب الصفات لاكمال هذه الجمل. ثم اكتب معاكسات الصفات.

## Opposites

- 1- Somebody who doesn't take care is **careless**. حذر **careful** لامبال
- 2- Something which doesn't cause harm is **harmless**. مؤذي **harmful** غير مؤذي
- 3- Something which doesn't cause pain is **painless**. مؤلم **painful** غير مؤلم
- 4- Someone who has no power is **powerless**. قوي **powerful** ضعيف
- 5- Something which you can't use is **useless**. مفيد **useful** بلا فائدة
- 6- Someone who never thinks is **thoughtless**. عميق التفكير **thoughtful** عديم التفكير



**C- Make the opposites of these adjectives. Use the prefixes *un*, *in* or *im*. Don't forget: we only use *im* before the letters *m* and *p*, e.g. improbable.**

كُون معاكسات لهذه الصفات. استخدم البادئات (*un/in/im*). لا تنسى: نحن فقط نستخدم (*im*) قبل الحرفين (*m/p*).

<u>un</u> attractive غير جذاب	<u>in</u> correct غير صحيح	<u>in</u> decisive متردد	<u>in</u> dependent مستقل
<u>in</u> expensive رخيص	<u>un</u> fashionable غير أنيق	<u>in</u> formal غير رسمي	<u>un</u> fortunate غير محظوظ
<u>un</u> healthy غير صحي	<u>un</u> interesting غير ممتع	<u>im</u> mature غير ناضج	<u>im</u> moral لا أخلاقي
<u>im</u> patient نافذ الصبر	<u>un</u> pleasant كريه	<u>im</u> polite غير مؤدب	<u>un</u> popular غير مشهور
<u>im</u> possible مستحيل	<u>im</u> practical غير عملي	<u>in</u> sensitive بلا شعور	<u>un</u> usual فريد

**E- Complete the sentences with one of the prefixed adjectives in Exercise C. (C) اكمل الجمل بواحدة من بادئات الصفات في تمرين**

- 1- Both his parents died when he was young and he has very little money. He has had an unfortunate life.
- 2- He keeps changing his mind. He is very indecisive.
- 3- He refused to wait even five minutes. He is terribly impatient.
- 4- I couldn't do my Maths homework this week because it was so hard. It was impossible.
- 5- People don't like him very much. He is rather unpopular.
- 6- She is eighteen, but she acts like an eight-year-old. I think she is very immature.
- 7- She isn't like other people. She is a very unusual person.

## عزيزي الطالب

ان هذه الملزمة التي بين يديك هي نفس الملزمة التي يعتمد عليها مدرس المادة في تدريسه الخصوصي حيث هي خلاصة جهد الاستاذ وهي خاضعة للتنقيح والتجديد المستمر من قبل مدرس المادة  
فاطلب النسخة الاصلية من

مكتب الشمس حصرا



**F- Listen and choose the correct words to end each sentence. Write the numbers 1 to 8 in the boxes.**

استمع ثم اختر الكلمات الصحيحة لانتهاء كل جملة. أكتب الأرقام من (١ - ٨) في الصناديق.

### **Tapescript:**

**Presenter: One.**

**Girl:** Is that restaurant quite cheap?

**Boy:** Yes. You don't need to be rich to eat there. It's really inexpensive.

**Presenter: Two.**

**Girl:** He never takes exercise or does sport. And he smokes a lot.

He must be very unhealthy.

**Presenter: Three.**

**Girl 1:** I couldn't read that sports article. It was very long and boring.

**Girl 2:** I agree. I also thought it was uninteresting.

**Presenter: Four.**

**Man:** In my opinion, your calculations are wrong and your answer is incorrect.

**Presenter: Five.**

**Woman:** You don't need to dress up tomorrow. Our parties are always very informal.

**Presenter: Six.**

**Man:** Rashid left home at eighteen and started his own business. He lives in his own apartment and he doesn't expect his parents to help him. He's very independent.

**Presenter: Seven.**

**Boy:** I don't like Adam because he's very rude.

**Girl:** I agree. He's very impolite.

**Presenter: Eight.**

**Girl:** Tawfiq is very good at studying, but he isn't good at doing simple things. For example he can't even fry an egg or make tea. And he doesn't know how to change the batteries in his camera. He really is impractical.



**Lesson 3****Have you ever had your eyes tested?**

هل سبق أن فحصت عينيك؟

**Vocabulary : مفردات**specialize (v.) يخصص/يتخصص  
contact lenses عدسات لاصقةoptician بصرياتي/فاحص البصر  
pierce يثقب★ **Complete the advertisements with the words in the box.**

أكمل الاعلانات بكلمات في الصندوق.

appointment	clean	earrings	easier	eyes	once
passport	people	prices	professional	ready	weddings

**Answers :**

- |            |                 |                 |
|------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1- earring | 5- professional | 9- people       |
| 2- clean   | 6- weddings     | 10- eyes        |
| 3- prices  | 7- passport     | 11- once        |
| 4- easier  | 8- ready        | 12- appointment |

**Activity Book-Lesson 3****Causative have/get - have/get** جملة سببية مع**Use - الاستخدام**

★ استخدم الجملة السببية مع *have* عندما ينفذ شخص أو يقوم بعمل ما لك. في أغلب الكلام غير الرسمي، يمكن ان تستخدم (*get*) بدلا من (*have*).

★ استخدم ( *have/get + object + p.p.* الصيغة الثالثة للفعل )

- She has her hair cut at the hairdresser's.
- I always get the car washed at the garage. I don't like washing it myself.
- Where did you get your passport photo taken?

★ **Write questions and answers with the present simple, present continuous, present perfect or past simple of have.**

اكتب أسئلة واجابات مع المضارع البسيط، المضارع المستمر، المضارع التام أو الماضي البسيط لـ (*have*).

**A: Samira / repair / the car / yet?**

- Has Samira had the car repaired yet?

**B: No, she / repair / it / tomorrow.**

- No, she's having it repaired tomorrow.

**1- Ahmed/fix/his camera yesterday?**

**A: Did Ahmed have his camera fixed yesterday?**

**B: No, he didn't.**



2- How often/he/usually/test/his eyes?

**A:** How often does he usually have his eyes tested?

*He / usually/test/them/once a year.*

**B:** He usually has them tested once a year.

3- What/she/do/to her house/at the moment?

**A:** What is she having done to her house at the moment?

*At the moment, she/repaint/the sitting room.*

**B:** At the moment she is having the sitting room repainted.

4- you/ever/clean/that coat?

**A:** Have you ever had that coat cleaned?

*Yes, I/clean/it/last summer.*

**B:** Yes, I had it cleaned last summer.

## Lesson 4

### A market where you can buy spices

السوق الذي يمكنك شراء التوابل فيه

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

incense بخور embroidery تطريز/زخرفة sword سيف dagger خنجر

★ Match the photos to the paragraphs صل الصور الى المقاطع

The Best of Iraq	الأفضل في العراق
1-[A] Everyone who has been there loves Souq Al-Safafeer. It is full of magnificent souvenir shops that have many ornaments, swords and daggers, which artistically represent the history and ancestry of Iraq.	1-[A] كل شخص كان هناك يحب سوق الصفافير. انه مليء بمحلات بيع التذكارات الرائعة التي تحتوي على العديد من الحلبي، سيوف وخنجر، التي تمثل وبشكل بارع تاريخ وأسلاف العراق.
2-[C] If you're looking for a market where you can buy traditional things like incense and perfumes. Al-Souq Al-Arabi is the place for you. Anyone who is interested in jewellery or embroidery should visit this exciting place.	2-[C] اذا تنظر الى سوق حيث يمكنك شراء أشياء تقليدية مثل البخور والعطور. السوق العربي هو مكان لك. كل شخص يستمتع بالمجوهرات أو بالزخارف عليه زيارة هذا المكان المثير.
3-[D] Tourists who want an adventure should go to the marshes in the south of Iraq. The scenes there look their best at dawn or sunset. Make sure you go by canoe with someone who knows the area well.	3-[D] السواح الذين يريدون مغامرة عليهم الذهاب الى الأهوار في جنوب العراق. المناظر هناك تبدو الأفضل عند الفجر أو عند الغروب تأكد من انك تذهب بواسطة المشحوف مع شخص يعرف المنطقة جيداً.



**Activity Book-Lesson 4****A- Study the language box. تأمل صندوق اللغة.****Using relative pronouns to join sentences:**

استخدام ضمائر الوصل لربط الجمل

\* We can use relative pronouns to join sentences.

يمكننا استخدام ضمائر الوصل لربط الجمل

There's a girl in my class. Her mother is a TV presenter.

There's a girl in my class **whose** mother is a TV presenter.

That's the shop. You can buy excellent incense there.

That's the shop **where** you can buy excellent incense.**Now join these sentences with where or whose. where/whose** الآن صل الجمل مع

- 1- Let's go to that beach **where** you can do windsurfing.
- 2- Do you know that girl in our school **whose** father is a football coach?
- 3- I've never met anyone **whose** hair is as long as my sister's.
- 4- Do you know a good jeweller's **where** I can get my ears pierced?
- 5- Karen is the person **whose** parents looked after me in London.
- 6- Have you been to that new shop **where** you can buy delicious Belgian chocolates?
- 7- Do you know a place **where** I can have my shoes repaired?

**B- Join these sentences using who, which, where or whose.**صل هذه الجمل باستخدام **who/which/where/whose**

- 1- Halwa is a new magazine. It has articles about food and fashion.  
- Halwa is a new magazine **which/that** has articles about food and fashion.
- 2- That man is a Lebanese TV presenter. His show is very popular.  
- That man is a Lebanese TV presenter **whose** show is very popular.
- 3- Ishtar Gate is a very expensive shop. You can buy wedding presents there.  
- Ishtar Gate is a very expensive shop **where** you can buy wedding presents there.
- 4- There's a boy in our class. His brother won a gold medal in the Asian Games.  
- There's a boy in our class **whose** brother won a gold medal in the Asian Games.
- 5- Iraqi Tours has excellent tour guides. They really know the country well.  
- Iraqi Tours has excellent tour guides **who** really know the country well.
- 6- The Rokia 22 is an inexpensive mobile phone. It takes good photos.  
- The Rokia 22 is an inexpensive mobile phone **which/that** takes good photos.
- 7- There's a lovely café overlooking the river. We could meet there for a coffee.  
- There's a lovely café overlooking the river **where** we could meet for a coffee.
- 8- Do you know my friend Salwa? Her brother has a red sports car.  
- Do you know my friend Salwa **whose** brother has a red sports car?



**C- When can relative pronouns be left out of sentences? Study the examples then complete the rules.**

متى يمكن حذف ضمائر الوصل من الجمل؟ تأمل الأمثلة ثم أكمل القواعد.

**When the relative pronouns can be left out**

متى يمكن حذف ضمائر الوصل

- Have you bought the bracelet *سوار*? We saw **it** yesterday.
  - Have you bought the bracelet (that/which) we saw yesterday?
  - \* When the **relative pronoun who, that or which** is the object of a verb, we **can** leave it out.
- عندما تكون ضمائر الوصل *who/that/which* مفعولاً به للفعل يمكننا شطبها في الجملة.
- The girl lives in Cairo. **She** gave me this ring.
  - The girl, who gave me this ring, lives in Cairo.
  - \* When the relative pronoun *who, that or which* is the subject of a verb, we **can't** leave it out.
- عندما تكون ضمائر الوصل *who/that/which* فاعلاً للفعل، فلا يمكننا شطبها في الجملة.

**D- Put brackets around who, which or that if it is possible to leave it out.**

ضع أقواساً حول *who/which/that* اذا يمكن حذفها في الجملة.

- 1- We're watching the DVD (**which**) Alan lent us.
- 2- Can I borrow the magazine (**that**) you got yesterday?
- 3- Who was the man (**that**) we met at the market this morning?
- 4- He's somebody who works in my father's shop.
- 5- The new teacher who started at our school this week comes from Jordan.
- 6- Can I borrow the pen (**which**) you were using a minute ago?
- 7- What did you think of the musician who was playing the trumpet?
- 8- I don't like films which make me cry.

★ **Complete these sentences with your own ideas.** أكمل هذه الجمل بأفكارك.

- 1- I like people who **works in honest**.
- 2- I don't like people who **always bring frowning**.
- 3- The cleverest person I've ever met is **Mustafa**.
- 4- The first thing that I ate this morning was **cornflakes and milk**.
- 5- One thing that I enjoy often do is **swimming in our pool**.



## Lesson 5/6

## Fifteen questions must be answered

## خمسون سؤالاً يجب ان يجاب عليها

★ Read the article. Find these words. If you can't work out the meanings, look them up in a dictionary and record them in your notebook.

اقرأ المقالة. جد هذه الكلمات. اذا كنت لا تستطيع العمل خارج المعاني، انظر اليها في قاموس وسجلها في دفترك.

suspense قلق/ حيرة	unbearable لا يمكن تحمله/ لا يطاق	contestant المتنافس/ المتباري
audience المشاهدين أو المستمعين	exported صدر	round (n.) جولة
successful ناجح	increasingly على نحو متزايد	guaranteed مضمون/ مضمون
lifeline وسيلة مساعدة	winnings أرباح/ مكاسب	time limit حدود الوقت
version نسخة معدلة	anxiety قلق/ تلهف	indecision حيرة/ تردد
educational تربوي		

## Who Wants to be A Millionaire?

## من يريد ان يكون مليونيراً؟

'Is that your final answer?' Chris Tarrant asks in English. 'Jawaab nihaa'ee?' asks George Kurdahi in Arabic. 'Yes, my final answer,' the contestant says weakly and waits to be told the result. There's a pause, then the music starts. The suspense is unbearable. A few seconds later, the contestant and the audience know if money has been won or lost.

هل ذلك هو جوابك الأخير؟ يسأل كرايز تارانت باللغة الانكليزية. 'جواب نهائي؟' يسأل جورج كرداحي باللغة العربية. 'نعم، جوابي الأخير' يقول المتنافس بشكل ضعيف وينتظر ليعلن النتيجة. يوجد توقف، ثم تبدأ الموسيقى. قلق لا يحتمل. بعد بضعة ثوان، يعرف المتنافس والمشاهد ان كانت الأموال قد فاز بها أو فقدتها.

Do you recognize the TV programme that is being described? It is called 'Who Wants To Be A Millionaire?' and it is the world's most popular game show. It was invented in Britain in 1998 and was taken to the United States a year later. In 1999 it was being shown six nights a week on the American channel ABC and now it has been exported to 70 other countries, including Pakistan, Indonesia and Turkey.

هل أنت تتعرف على البرنامج التلفزيوني الموصوف؟ انه يسمى 'من يريد ان يكون مليونيراً؟' وانه برنامج الألعاب الأكثر شهرة في العالم. ابتكر في بريطانيا عام ١٩٩٨ وقدم بنسخة امريكية في الولايات المتحدة بعد سنة. في عام ١٩٩٩ كان يعرض ست ليال في الاسبوع على القناة الامريكية ABC والان تم تصدير البرنامج الى ٧٠ دولة أخرى. بضمنها باكستان، اندونيسيا وتركيا.

At the beginning of each show, ten contestants take part in a first round called 'Fastest Finger First'. They are asked to put four answers in a particular order. The successful contestant is allowed to sit in the chair and play the main game.

في بداية كل حلقة، يشارك عشرة متنافسين في الجولة الأولى تسمى 'الأسرع الذي يضع اصبعه يكون أولاً'. يطلب منهم وضع اربعة اجابات في ترتيب معين. المتنافس الناجح يسمح له بالجلوس في الكرسي ويلعب اللعبة الرئيسية.



The contestant is asked increasingly difficult questions. Each time, the correct answer must be chosen from four possibilities. Money is won for each correct answer. If a contestant answers incorrectly, he usually loses all the money he has won. However, there are some amounts of money that are guaranteed - £1,000 and £32,000.

If a contestant is not sure of the answer, he is allowed to use one of three 'lifelines', but each lifeline can be used once only. He can phone a friend, ask the audience, or ask for a 50:50. When a contestant asks for a 50:50, two incorrect answers will be taken away by the computer and two answers will be left. One of these is right and one is wrong. When all three lifelines have been used, the game gets more difficult, but contestants don't have to answer a question if it is too difficult. Instead, they can keep their winnings and stop playing. To win a million, a total of fifteen questions must be answered.

In Britain, by 2005 the top prize of a million pounds had been won four times. The Arabic version of the game was first shown in November 2000 and already two contestants have won the top prize of one million Saudi riyals.

The last series of the British show was watched by 18 million viewers. What makes the show so popular? Firstly, there is no time limit for answering the questions. This means that a lot of suspense is built up while the contestant thinks about the answer. Another reason is that viewers always imagine they are playing the game. While they watch, they decide which of the four answers they would choose and they often share the contestant's anxiety and indecision. Finally, the show is quite educational. At the end of each show, most people watching it have learnt at least two or three new facts. □

يتم سؤال المتنافس بأسئلة تزداد صعوبتها تدريجياً. في كل مرة، يجب أن يتم اختيار الاجابة الصحيحة من أربعة احتمالات. يتم ربح المال لكل اجابة صحيحة. اذا يجيب المتنافس بشكل خاطئ، هو عادة يخسر كل النقود التي ربحها. لكن توجد كمية من المال تكون مضمونة ١٠٠٠ جنيه و ٣٢٠٠٠ جنيه.

عندما يكون المتنافس غير متأكد من الاجابة، يسمح له باستخدام واحدة من ثلاث وسائل للمساعدة، لكن كل وسيلة مساعدة تستخدم لمرة واحدة فقط. يمكنه الاتصال بصديق، يسأل جمهور المشاهدين، أو يطلب حذف اجابتين. عندما يطلب المتنافس حذف اجابتين، فتحذف اجابتين غير صحيحتين من قبل الحاسوب وستبقى اجابتين احدهما صحيحة والاخرى خطأ. عندما تستخدم جميع وسائل المساعدة الثلاث، فان اللعبة تصبح أكثر صعوبة، لكن المتنافسين ليس عليهم أن يجيبوا على سؤال ان كان صعبا جدا، بدلا من ذلك، يمكنهم الاحتفاظ بارياحهم والتوقف عن اللعب. لربح مبلغ المليون، فان جميع الأسئلة الخمسة عشر يجب أن يتم الاجابة عليها.

في بريطانيا في عام ٢٠٠٥ الجائزة الكبرى للمليون جنيه تم الفوز بها اربعة مرات. النسخة العربية للعبة ظهرت اولاً في شهرت ٢٠٠٠ عام وحالا ربح متنافسان الجائزة الكبرى مليون ريال سعودي.

المسلسل الاخير للبرنامج البريطاني تم مشاهدته من قبل ١٨ مليون مشاهد. ماذا يجعل من البرنامج أن يكون مشهورا جدا؟ أولاً، لا يوجد وقت محدد للاجابة على الأسئلة. هذا يعني ان الكثير من القلق ينشأ بينما يكون المتنافس يفكر حول الاجابة. سبب آخر هو ان المشاهدين دائما يتخيلون انهم يلعبون اللعبة. خلال مشاهدتهم، انهم يقررون أي من الاجابات الاربعة سيختارون وهم غالباً يشاركون المتنافسين قلقهم وحيرتهم. أخيراً، البرنامج هو تربوي تماماً. في نهاية كل حلقة يكون أغلب الناس المشاهدين للبرنامج قد تعلموا على الأقل عن حقيقتين أو ثلاث حقائق جديدة.

ملاحظة: القطعة مهمة في الامتحانات.



**Activity Book-Lesson 5****A- Use these words in sentences that show their meaning.**

استخدم هذه الكلمات في جمل تظهر معانيها.

**(contestant, audience, successful, anxiety, suspense)**

1. The **contestant** is running fast trying to win the prize.
2. The **audience** were clapping for ten minutes.
3. The team were **successful** in winning the contract.
4. If you're worried about your health, share your **anxieties** with your doctor.
5. I couldn't bear the **suspense** a moment longer.

**B- Answer these questions about the text on Student's Book pages 88 and 89.**

أجب على هذه الأسئلة حول النص في الصفحتين ٨٨ و ٨٩ من كتاب الطالب.

1- What kind of TV show is 'Who Wants To Be A Millionaire'?

ما نوع البرنامج التلفزيوني من يريد أن يكون مليونيراً؟

- It is a TV game show. انه برنامج ألعاب

2- How many contestants take part in the first round?

كم عدد المتنافسين المشاركين في الجولة الاولى؟

- Ten contestants take part in the first round. عشرة متنافسين يشاركون في الجولة الاولى

3- How many possible answers are there to each question?

كم عدد الاجابات المحتملة لكل سؤال؟

- There are four possible answers to each question. أربعة اجابات محتملة لكل سؤال

4- Explain this sentence in your own words: Some amounts of money are guaranteed - £1,000 and £32,000. اشرح هذه الجملة: بعض المال يكون مضموناً ١٠٠٠ و ٣٢٠٠٠ جنيهه.

- These amounts of money cannot be lost. If a contestant wins either £1000 or £2000, he or she keeps it even if the next answer is wrong.

لا يمكن فقدان هذا المال. اذا يربح المتباري إما ١٠٠٠ أو ٢٢٠٠٠ جنيهه، فانه سيحتفظ به حتى اذا لم يجب على السؤال التالي.

5- When can a contestant use a lifeline? متى يمكن للمتبارين استخدام وسيلة مساعدة

- contestants can use a lifeline when they are not sure of answers.

عندما لم يكونوا متأكدين من الاجابات.

6- Which lifeline do you think is least useful and why? أي وسيلة مساعدة تعتقد انها اقل فائدة

7- Have you seen this show? هل سبق ان شاهدت هذا البرنامج

8- Do you like it? Why or why not? هل تعجبك؟ لماذا؟ لماذا لا؟

6,7,8 are individual answers.

**Activity Book-Lesson 6****A- Read the article on Student's Book pages 88- and 89 again and underline all the passive verbs.**

اقرأ المقالة على الصفحتين ٨٨ و ٨٩ من كتاب الطالب مرة أخرى ثم ضع خطاً تحت جميع أفعال المبني للمجهول.



**Answers:**

- to be told (passive infinitive) - is being described (present continuous)
- is called (present simple) - was invented (past simple)
- was taken (past simple) - was being shown (past continuous)
- has been exported (present perfect) - is allowed (present simple)
- is asked (present simple) - must be chosen (modal present)
- is won (present simple) - are guaranteed (present simple)
- is allowed (present simple) - can be used (modal present)
- will be taken away (modal future) - will be left (modal future)
- have been used (present perfect) - must be answered (modal present)
- has been won (present perfect) - was (first) shown (past simple)
- was watched (past simple) - is built up (present simple)

\* يستخدم المبني للمجهول غالبا لوصف: ألعاب، قواعد وعمليات تقنية أو علمية.  
 \* ان النص عادة يحتوي على تنوع لصيغ مختلفة. لا يمكن كتابة نص طويل أو تقديم حديث طويل بدون استخدام عدة صيغ مختلفة.

**B- Write the correct tense name of the passive forms used in these examples.** أكتب اسم الصيغة الصحيحة لأشكال المبني للمجهول في هذه الأمثلة.

modal verb	infinitive	present perfect	past perfect
		present continuous	past continuous

- 1- Do you recognize the programme that is being described? (present continuous)
- 2- In 1999 it was being shown six nights a week. (past continuous)
- 3- And now it has been exported to 70 other countries. (present perfect)
- 4- By 2005, the top prize of a million pounds had been won four times. (past perfect)
- 5- Each lifeline can be used once only. (modal present)
- 6- Two incorrect answers will be taken away by the computer. (modal future)
- 7- A total of fifteen questions must be answered. (modal present)
- 8- The contestant waits to be told the result. (infinitive)

**C- Rewrite the sentences putting the underlined verbs in the passive.** أعد كتابة الجمل واضعاً الأفعال التي تحتها خط بصيغة المبني للمجهول.

They have exported the show to 70 other countries.

- The show has been exported to 70 other countries

1- People have won the top prize twice.

- The top prize has been won twice.

2- When they have used all three lifelines, things get harder.

- When all three lifelines have been used, things get harder.

3- They were showing it six nights a week in America in 1999.

- It was being shown six nights a week in America in 1999.

4- They are making a new series of the show at the moment.

- A new series of the show is being made at the moment.

5- I couldn't use the Internet because somebody was using the computer.

- I couldn't use the Internet because the computer was being used.



6- When we got to the airport, we found that they **had cancelled** the flight.  
- When we got to the airport, we found that the flight had been cancelled.

7- They **should spend** more money on health and education.  
- More money should be spent on health and education.

8- You **can't wash** this jacket. You **have to dry-clean** it.  
- This jacket can't be washed. It has to be dry-cleaned.

D- Write questions in the passive which have these numbers and facts from the text as the answers. أكتب أسئلة بصيغة المبني للمجهول تتضمن أرقام وحقائق من النص كاجوبة.

1- When **was the show invented?** - 1998.

2- How many nights a week was it shown on the ABC channel in 1999?  
- Six nights a week.

3- How many countries has it been exported to ? - To 70 countries.

4- To win a million, how many questions must/have to be answered?  
- A total of fifteen questions.

5- How many times had the top prize of a million pounds been won by 2005? OR

How many times has the top prize of a million pounds been won by 2005?  
- Four times.

6- When was the Arabic version of the game first shown? - In November 2000.

7- How many viewers/people has it been seen/watched by?  
- By 18 million viewers.

E- Write a description of your favourite TV show in about (80-100) words.

أكتب وصفا لبرنامجك التلفزيوني المفضل. أكتب حوالي (٨٠-١٠٠) كلمة. (انشاء مهم في الامتحانات)

### Your favourite TV show

My favourite TV show is National Geography Channel. It offers a variety of programs, which include discoveries, anthropology, history, geography, Physical ... etc. It shows different topics everyday. I can absorb the useful knowledge. Now, programs full of boring content and sensational gossips on TV. In my opinion, choosing a program of good quality could improve and clean your mind and your thoughts.

### برنامجك المفضل

برنامجي التلفزيوني المفضل هو قناة ناشنال جيوغرافي. وهي تقدم مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج. والتي تشمل الاكتشافات، علم الانسان، التاريخ، الجغرافيه، المادة ... الخ. انها تعرض مواضيع مختلفه كل يوم، مايمكنني من استيعاب المعرفة المفيدة. ان البرامج التلفزيونية الآن مليئة بالمحتويات المملة والثرثرة المثيرة. برأي، ان اختيار برنامج من نوعية جيدة يمكن أن يحسن وينقي عقلك وأفكارك.



## Lesson 7

استخدم حبرا أزرق أو أسود Use blue or black ink

Vocabulary : مفردات

اليورو (وحدة النقد في اوربا) euro مكتب توفير عمالة (حسب الطلب) model agency

★ Complete the form with the correct words from the list.  
أكمل الاستمارة بكلمات صحيحة من القائمة.

address عنوان	date of birth تاريخ الميلاد	language لغة
post بريد	Attach يرفق	e-mail بريد الكتروني
middle name الاسم الوسط	title لقب	signature توقيع
capitals حروف كبيرة	first name الاسم الأول	mobile هاتف محمول
status حالة	complete أكمل	gender الجنس
national جنسية	telephon هاتف	surname كنية
date تاريخ	ink حبر	occupation العمل (الحالي)

Babylon International Festival مهرجان بابل الدولي

If you are interested in being a volunteer at the Babylon Festival, please  
① **complete** this form in BLOCK ② **capitals**. Use blue or black ③ **ink**  
and return it to the Babylon Festival Committee by ④ **post**. Please  
⑤ **attach** a recent photo.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ⑥ <b>First Name:</b> ADAM                               | ⑦ <b>Middle Name:</b> JOHN             |
| ⑧ <b>Surname:</b> MORETON                               | ⑨ <b>Date of Birth:</b> 18/09/1989     |
| ⑩ <b>Gender:</b> Male                                   | ⑪ <b>Title:</b> Mr                     |
| ⑫ <b>Marital Status:</b> Single                         | ⑬ <b>Nationality:</b> BRITISH          |
| ⑭ <b>Occupation:</b> STUDENT                            | ⑮ <b>Address:</b> P.O. Box. 1499, IRAQ |
| ⑯ <b>Home Telephone:</b> 434145                         | ⑰ <b>Mobile:</b> 553268                |
| ⑱ <b>E-Mail Address:</b> adamjamoreton@hotmail.com      |  |
| ⑲ <b>Singnature:</b> Adam John Moreton                  |  |
| ⑳ <b>Date:</b> 3 <sup>rd</sup> January 2006             |  |
| ㉑ <b>Preferred language for correspondence:</b> ENGLISH |  |



**Activity Book-Lesson 7****A- Read the information. Then use it to fill in the form.**

اقرأ المعلومات. ثم استخدمها لملأ الاستمارة.

Safia Azzedine is from Basra, in Iraq. She is 22 years old and she is studying Tourism at Westminster University in London. She has lived in Britain for two years and now speaks English almost as well as Arabic. Before coming to Britain, she spent three years in France, where she perfected her French. She loves sport, especially swimming, waterskiing and riding. She worked at a sports club in Paris for three months as a swimming instructor.

صافية عزالدين من البصرة في العراق. عمرها ٢٢ سنة وتدرس السياحة في جامعة ويستمنستر في لندن. عاشت في بريطانيا سنتين وهي الآن تتحدث الانكليزية مثل العربية تقريبا. قبل ان تأتي الى بريطانيا، قضت ثلاث سنوات في فرنسا، حيث أجادت لغتها الفرنسية. انها تحب الرياضة، وخاصة السباحة، التزحلق على الماء وامتطاء الحصان. عملت في نادي رياضي في باريس لمدة ثلاثة أشهر كمعلمة سباحة.

### International Sports Club Application form for temporary work

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| ① <b>First name:</b> Safia  | ② <b>Surname:</b> Azzedine  |
| ③ <b>Age:</b> 22  | ④ <b>Gender:</b> Femal      |
| ⑤ <b>Occupation:</b> Student  | ⑥ <b>Nationality:</b> Iraqi |
| ⑦ <b>Languages:</b> Arabic, English, French   |                             |
| ⑧ <b>How long have you been in Britain?</b> 2 years   |                             |
| ⑨ <b>Favourite sports:</b> Swimming, waterskiing, riding                                      |                             |
| ⑩ <b>Experience as a sports instructor:</b><br>Swimming instructor for three months in Paris. |                             |

**Activity Book-Lesson 8****Vocabulary : مفردات**

positive ايجابي

negative سلبي

anxious قلق/متلهف

embarrassed خجل/مرتبك

relieved هادئ/مطمئن

**A- Which of the adjectives below describe positive feelings and which describe negative feelings? Write P (positive) or N (negative) next to each one.**

أي الصفات في أدناه تصف مشاعر ايجابية وأي منها تصف مشاعر سلبية؟ أكتب (P) أو (N) بجانب كل صفة.

anxious قلق (N)	disappointed مبهط (N)	relaxed مسترخي (P)
fed up طفح الكيل (N)	embarrassed خجل (N)	relieved مرتاح (P)
ashamed خجل (N)	energetic نشيط (P)	thrilled مثار (P)



bored ضجر (N)	excited مثار (P)	tired متعب (N)
calm هادئ (P)	exhausted مرهق (N)	upset منزعج (N)
cheerful مبتهج (P)	grateful شاكر (P)	worried قلق (N)
confident واثق (P)	pleased مسرور (P)	

## Lesson 9

### أنا فعلا آسفة I'm really sorry

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

plumber سمكري

About time! (learn) by heart, I suppose so خلال الوقت تحفظ، افترض ذلك

take ages يستغرق وقتا طويلا I guess not اعتقد كلا أنا موافق It's a deal

★ Listen and read this dialogue. Do you think Latifa's explanation is true or just an excuse? استمع ثم اقرأ هذا الحوار. هل تعتقد أن شرح لطيفة حقيقي أم فقط اعتذار؟

Latifa: Hi, Muna.

Muna: You're very late, Latifa. Forty-five minutes, in fact.

Latifa: Oh, dear! I'm really sorry. But I...

Muna: Don't tell me - you have a good excuse, Latifa. You always do!

Latifa: No, honestly, Muna, I couldn't help it. Just as I was leaving the house, water started pouring out of a pipe in the kitchen and I had to call a plumber.

Muna: You had to call a plumber!

Latifa: Yes, there was only Grandmother and me at home.

Muna: And did he fix it?

Latifa: Yes, but he took ages. So you see, it isn't really my fault I'm late.

Muna: I guess not. But why didn't you call me?

Latifa: I left my mobile at my cousin's and it's got your mobile number on it.

Muna: You should know my number by heart by now.

Latifa: You're right. I promise I'll learn it.

Muna: About time!

Latifa: So, am I forgiven?

Muna: I suppose so. But you'll have to pay for lunch.

Latifa: Sure! It's a deal!

#### Answer:

Most probably Latifa's explanation is true because Muna accepts it, although she says "you have a good excuse" at the beginning.



- ★ These expressions are commonly used in informal speech. What do they mean? What would you say in a more formal situation?

هذه العبارات تستخدم عادة في الحديث غير الرسمي. ماذا تعني؟ ماذا تود أن تقول في حالة أكثر رسمية؟

**Answer:**

Hi! = Hello

I couldn't help it = There was nothing else I could do./I had to do it.

He took ages = He took a very long time.

I guess not = I believe you had no choice

About time! = It is time you did this (learned my phone number./

You should have learned it before now

I suppose so = Yes, I do forgive you, but reluctantly/unwillingly

Sure! = of course

It's a deal! = I agree

**Activity Book-Lesson 10**

- A- Listen and read. What is different in the way these two people speak? استمع ثم اقرأ. ما الاختلاف في طريقة تحدث هذين الشخصين؟

**Boy:** Hi guys! Do you realize that I've finished my exams?

**Man:** Hello, Mr Donaldson. I'm pleased to tell you that we've finished the job.

- \* When we are excited about something good or bad, our intonation goes up and down much more. عندما نشعر بالاثارة حول شيء ما جيد أو سيء، ترتفع النغمة أو تنخفض كثيراً جداً.

**Student Book-Revision 1**

**Two magnificent goals هدفان رائعان**

**Vocabulary : مفردات**

accurate دقيق

serve and volley تنفيذ ضربة كرة

opponent الخصم

impress يؤثر في / يحدث أثراً

style أسلوب

confidence ثقة

decision حكم / قرار

bravely بشجاعة

lose heart يفقد الأمل

incredible لا يصدق

victory نصر / انتصار

autograph توقيع / امضاء

- ★ Which article contains mostly facts? Which one contains mostly opinions? Underline the opinions in both articles.

أي مقالة تتضمن حقائق في الغالب؟ أي منها تتضمن آراء في الغالب؟ ضع خطاً تحت الآراء في كلا المقالتين.

**Answers:**

**First article**

In a very interesting and, at times, exciting game yesterday in Madrid, England showed that they can be the best in the world. Their defence was magic. For 89 minutes it looked impossible for a ball to get through. In fact it looked impossible for anything to get through! Sadly, late in the first half, the Spanish number 9 managed to score a rather lucky goal.

In the end, the Spanish goal was of no consequence. Wayne Rooney scored two magnificent goals early in the second half. He is always good; yesterday be



*was brilliant. He got a yellow card in the last few minutes of the game, after he had pushed Baraja. In my view, the referee was wrong to give it. This performance by the England team will not be forgotten for a very long time.*

### Second article:

The England defence managed to keep out the Spanish attack until the forty-first minute, when Vicente scored a goal from fourteen metres. England fought back in the second half and Rooney scored twice (52<sup>nd</sup> minute and 59<sup>th</sup> minute). Then Rooney got angry. He pushed Ruben Baraja to the ground and got a yellow card. This is his fifth yellow card this season. *In general, however, it was a good performance by both teams.*

### Activity Book-Revision 1

**A- Read this newspaper report. It is a mixture of facts and opinions. Find the facts and write them on page 185.**

اقرأ التقرير الصحفي هذا. انه مزيج من حقائق وآراء. جد الحقائق ثم اكتبها على صفحة ١٨٥.

INDIA'S SHINING STAR	النجم الساطع الهندي
<p>Here at the French Open Championship in Paris yesterday, we saw one of this year's most exciting matches.</p> <p>The eighteen-year-old Indian star Vidya Patel got through to the quarter-finals by beating Carmen Sanchez, from Venezuela, who is twelve years older.</p> <p>Miss Patel looked confident from the start of the match, although she had never beaten the Venezuelan before. She has a beautiful serve, fast and accurate, which often went straight past Miss Sanchez. Her fastest serve was 158 kph. Throughout the first set, the older woman looked uncomfortable, unable to find any answer to the brilliant serve and volley of her opponent, and lost 3 - 6. Although Carmen is a favourite with the crowd here in Paris, you could feel the support for the young Indian player increasing as the match went on. We were all most impressed with her style and confidence.</p> <p>In the second set, Miss Sanchez fought back bravely. She had a look of calm decision in her eyes. She seemed to be saying: <i>I have more experience - I will show you!</i> She won the set 7-5. In the third set, however, she once again lost heart. After a few games, she appeared to give up. Miss Patel played brilliantly and finished off the set at 6-2, after one hour and 47 minutes. This young player is going to be one of the great stars of women's tennis. □</p>	<p>هنا في بطولة فرنسا المفتوحة للتنس في باريس أمس، شاهدنا واحدة من أكثر المباريات إثارة هذا العام.</p> <p>النجمة الهندية فيديا باتيل البالغة من العمر ثمانية عشر عاماً وصلت الى الربع النهائي بواسطة هزيمة كارمن سانشيز من فنزويلا، البالغة من العمر اثني عشر عاماً.</p> <p>الأنسة باتيل بدت واثقة منذ بداية المباراة، رغم انها لم تهزم لاعب فنزويلي من قبل. ان لها بداية ضريية، سرعة ودقة جميلة، التي غالباً ما ذهبت بشكل مستقيم متجاوزة الأنسة سانشيز. أسرع بداية ضريية كانت بسرعة ١٥٨ كم/سا. خلال الدورة الاولى، السيدة الكبيرة بدت غير مرتاحة، غير قادرة على ايجاد أي اجابة على بداية الضريية وانسياب الكرة الرائع لخصمها، وخسرت ٦-٣. رغم ان كارمن هي المفضلة من الجمهور هنا في باريس، الا انه يمكنك أن تشعر بالمساندة للاعبة الشابة الهندية وهي تزداد عندما تواصلت المباراة. كنا جميعاً متأثرين بأسلوبها وثقتها.</p> <p>في الدورة الثانية، عادت الأنسة سانشيز تقاتل بشجاعة. كانت لها نظرة قرار هادىء في عينيها. لقد بدت لتقول: <i>ان لدي تجربة أكثر - ساريكم!</i> لقد فازت في الدورة ٥-٧. في الدورة الثالثة - على أية حال، فقدت الأمل مرة ثانية - وبعد عدة مباريات بدت انها تستسلم. لقد لعبت الأنسة باتيل بشكل رائع وانتهت الدورة لصالحها ٦-٢، بعد ساعة و ٤٧ دقيقة. هذه اللاعبة الشابة ستكون واحدة من أكبر نجوم تنس السيدات.</p>



**Answers:**

- Vidya patel is from India. She is 18. (= 2 facts)
- Patel beat Carmen Sanchez at the French Open.
- Championship and got through to the quarter-final.
- Sanchez is from Venezuela. She is 30.
- Patel's fastest serve was 158 kph.
- Patel won the first set 6-3.
- Sanchez won the second set 7-5.
- Patel won the third set 6-2.
- The game lasted one hour and forty-seven minutes.

**Activity Book- Revision 2**

**A- All the vowels are missing in the words below. Read the clues and write the complete words.**

جميع حروف العلة مفقودة في الكلمات أدناه. اقرأ التلميحات ثم أكتب الكلمات كاملة.

**Adjectives: صفات**

- 1- **BRLNT** Fantastic, very good. Brilliant رائع
- 2- **DSPNTD** Sad because things didn't happen as you expected.  
(disappointed) مخيب الأمل / مثبط العزيمة
- 3- **MBRRSSD** Feeling that everyone saw you make a mistake.  
(embarrassed) مرتبك / خجول
- 4- **FRS** Very angry. (furious) غاضب
- 5- **PNLSS** It didn't hurt. It was ... (painless) غير مؤلم
- 6- **NXS** Worried. (anxious) قلق

**Different kinds of people شرائح مختلفة من الناس**

- 1- **HRDRSSR** Someone who cuts hair. (hairdresser) حلاق
- 2- **JWLLR** Someone who sells bracelets, necklaces, rings.  
(jeweller) صانع
- 3- **PLMBR** Someone who fixes pipes and bathrooms.  
(plumber) سباك
- 4- **CNTSTNT** Someone who is taking part in a competition or game.  
(contestant) متنافس
- 5- **VWR** Someone who is watching TV. (viewer) مشاهد
- 6- **DNC** People who are watching a live show. (audience) جمهور
- 7- **GST** Someone who comes to stay. (guest) ضيف / زائر

**Natural world عالم الطبيعية**

- 1- **SNW** It's never cold enough in summer for this. (snow) ثلج
- 2- **DWN** When the sun comes up. (down) فجر
- 3- **SNST** When the sun goes down. (sunset) غروب
- 4- **C** Frozen water. (ice) جليد



## B- Write the missing letter at the beginning and end of each word.

The clues will help you. أكتب الحرف المفقود في بداية ونهاية كل كلمة. التلميحات ستساعدك.

- 1- She always smells nice. She wears lovely ... **PERFUME** عطر
- 2- What time are they going to ... the meal? **SERVE** تقديم الطعام
- 3- Shall I do it? Yes? No? I hate this ... **INDECISION** تردد/حيرة
- 4- I'm really sorry. Please ... me. **FORGIVE** يسامح/يغفر
- 5- The ... gave him a yellow card in the last match. **REFEREE** حكم مباراة
- 6- He is very worried. He is suffering from ... **ANXIETY** قلق/جزع
- 7- They're getting married. Their ... is next month. **WEDDING** حفل زواج/عرس
- 8- They tied the two boats together with ... **ROPE** حبل
- 9- Who won the first ... of the game? **ROUND** جولة
- 10- Another word for build. **CONSTRUCT** يبني/ينشئ
- 11- To have a picture in your mind. **IMAGINE** يتخيل
- 12- Write your ... at the end of the form. **SIGNATURE** توقيع

## Activity Book-Test 1

## B- Complete the sentences with words from the box.

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من الصندوق

anxious	audience	disappointed	Embarrassed
furious	imagine	signature	thrilled

- 1- You've broken my glasses, you silly boy. I'm **furious** with you.
- 2- At the end of the play, the **audience** clapped and shouted.
- 3- At the restaurant, I didn't have enough money to pay the bill. I was very **embarrassed**, but the waiter told me I could bring the money the next day.
- 4- Can you **imagine** how life will be in the year 2050?
- 5- He didn't get the place at medical school that he expected, so he is rather **disappointed**.
- 6- My parents were **thrilled** when I won first prize in a photography competition.
- 7- He's very **anxious** about his wife, who is seriously ill.
- 8- I don't know who this letter is from. I can't read the **signature**.

## C- Circle the correct words. ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة.

- 1- Did you see the bracelet **that** I bought for Muna?  
a- who                      b- where                      **c- that**
- 2- He said he hadn't **been** told about the extra class.  
a- be                      **b- been**                      c- being



- 3- I don't like people **who** tell lies.  
a- they **b- who** c- when
- 4- How many matches **have** been played so far?  
**a- have** b- are c- were
- 5- You can have clothes **made** there very cheaply.  
a- making b- make **c- made**
- 6- I like films **which** make me laugh.  
a- when b- whose **c- which**
- 7- The doors **are** locked every night.  
**a- are** b- must c- they
- 8- I know someone **whose** father is a film star.  
a- their b- which **c- whose**
- 9- There's a nice restaurant **where** you can sit outside.  
**a- where** b- which c- that
- 10- When are we **being driven** to the airport?  
a- be driven b- be drove **c- being driven**
- 11- Where did you **get** your car repaired?  
**a- get** b- getting c- got
- 12- Where will the new sports centre **be built**?  
a- being built b- building **c- be built**

**D- Use the prompts to complete these dialogues. Write questions in the first part and statements in the second. Remember to check the tenses and the punctuation.**

استخدم المحفزات لإكمال هذه الحوارات. أكتب أسئلة في الجزء الأول وجمل في الثاني وتذكر لتدقق الصيغ والتعقيط.

1- Sara: (hair/look nice/where/get/cut)

**Your hair looks nice. Where did you get it cut?**

Layla: At home.

Sara: (really/your mother/do/it)

**Really? Did your mother do it?**

Layla: No, it was done by Jameela.

Sara: (Jameela/friend)

**Is Jameela your/a friend?**

Layla: No, she's a hairdresser who comes to our house.

2- Salman: (my brother/interviewed/a reporter/yesterday)

**My brother was interviewed by a reporter yesterday.**

Jamal: Why?

Salman: (he/captain/tennis team/won/Cup)

**He is the captain of the tennis team that won the Cup.**

Jamal: Oh, that's good. Will he be on TV?



**Salman:** (no/photo/taken/in today's newspaper)

**No, but his photo was taken and it should/will/may/might be in today's newspaper.**

**Jamal:** Are you going to buy the newspaper?

**Salman:** (no/reporter said/it/sent/our house)

**No, the reporter said it would be sent to our house.**

**Jamal:** Well, I'd better buy one.

## Activity Book-Test 2

**A- Read the article and choose the best title. اقرأ المقالة ثم اختر أفضل عنوان**

### LONDON'S MOST FAMOUS STORE

### ONLY FOR MILLIONAIRES

### THE BEST SHOP IN THE WORLD

Where to buy expensive food

London's most expensive shoes

Without a doubt, Harrods is London's most famous department store. It is situated in Knightsbridge, one of London's most expensive areas.

Harrods, which was founded in 1834 by Charles Henry Harrod in east London, was moved to its current site in Knightsbridge, central London, fifteen years later. To begin with, the shop was just one room with two shop assistants and a messenger boy. By 1880, Harrod's son, Charles Digby, had built up the business so that the shop sold medicines, perfumes, notebooks and paper, fruit and vegetables. In 1883, there was a fire and the shop burned to the ground. A new building was immediately constructed, however, and since then Harrods has gone from strength to strength.

Today Harrods is a huge department store with 35,000 customers every day. During the sales, there are 300,000 customers a day. The shop has 4,000 people working in the store. The food department sells 250 different kinds of cheese and 130 different types of bread. The confectionery department sells 100 tonnes of chocolate per year. The exterior of the store is lit by 12,500 bulbs and 300 of them have to be changed every day.

Harrods has a motto which is 'Everything for Everybody Everywhere'. If you are rich enough, you can buy diamond-covered shoes which cost a million pounds! And there are many more true stories about unusual things which have been sold to important customers. In the early 1900s, wealthy customers could even buy planes and sailing boats from

بدون شك، ان محلات هارودز هي من أكثر المحلات شهرة في لندن. انها تقع في منطقة (knightsbridge) وهي من أكثر مناطق لندن الثرية.

محلات هارودز، التي تأسست عام ١٨٣٤ من قبل جارلس هنري هارود في شرق لندن، قد انتقلت الى موقعها الحالي وسط لندن، بعد خمسين سنة. لتبدأ مع محل كان عبارة عن غرفة واحدة ومع عاملين وصبي ساعي واحد. في عام ١٨٨٠، هارودز الابن، جارلس دكبي، طور عمله التجاري حيث أصبح المحل يبيع الدواء، العطور، المفكرات والورق، فواكه وخضروات. في عام ١٨٨٣، حدث حريق واحترق المحل حتى الأرض. مبنى جديد انشئ حالا، ولكن منذ ذلك الحين مضت المحلات من رسوخ الى رسوخ.

اليوم فان محلات هارودز تضم أقساما كثيرة جدا ويصل عدد زبائنها كل يوم الى ٢٥ ألف. وخلال مواسم التخفيضات فان زبائنها يصل عددهم الى ٣٠٠ ألف كل يوم. يعمل في المحلات ٤٠٠٠ شخص يبيع قسم الطعام ٢٥٠ نوع مختلف من الأجبان و ١٣٠ نوع مختلف من الصمون. يبيع قسم الحلويات ١٠٠ طن من الشوكولا كل سنة. تتم اضاءة المشهد الخارجي للمحلات بواسطة ١٢٥٠٠ مصباح كهربائي و ٣٠٠ منها يتم استبدالها كل يوم.

لمحلات هارودز شعار كل شيء لكل شخص في أي مكان. اذا أنت ثري جدا، يمكنك شراء حذاء مرصع بالجوهرات والذي يكلف مليون باوند! وتوجد الكثير من القصص الحقيقية عن أشياء غير اعتيادية يبعث الى زبائن مهمين. في بدايات القرن التاسع عشر، أمكن للزبائن الأثرياء حتى شراء طائرات وزوارق شراعية من محلات هارودز. طبعاً، كان عليهم ان يقدموا طلباتهم أولاً، ثم يدفعون



Harrods. Of course they had to be ordered first, then paid for, then delivered. Later, in the 1930s, Harrods had on show one of the world's first television sets. The famous British writer, Noel Coward, was once given an alligator which had been ordered and bought at Harrods as a Christmas gift. The American president, Ronald Reagan, was given a baby elephant which had been bought at Harrods. The British film director, Alfred Hitchcock, used to have his favourite fresh fish flown out to him in America by Harrods.

While it is true that Harrods sells just about anything you could want, it is one of the most expensive shops in Britain. So perhaps Harrods should change their motto to 'Everything for Everybody Rich Everywhere'!

قيمتها، بعد ذلك ترسل لهم البضاعة فيما بعد وفي ثلاثينات القرن الماضي، كانت محلات هارودز في أول عرض لبرنامج على أجهزة التلفاز الأولى في العالم. الكاتب البريطاني المشهور، نويل كوارد، قدم له مرة تمساحا الذي تم طلبه وشراؤه من محلات هارودز كهدية في أعياد الميلاد. الرئيس الأمريكي رونالد ريغان، قدم له فيل صغير تم شراؤه من محلات هارودز. مخرج الافلام البريطاني، ألفريد هيتشكوك، اعتاد تناول السمك الطازج المفضل لديه الذي كان يرسل له بالطائرة الى أمريكا من قبل محلات هارودز.

بينما هي الحقيقة ان محلات هارودز تباع أي شيء تريده، الا انها واحدة من أكثر المحلات غلاء في بريطانيا. لهذا ربما على محلات هارودز تغيير شعارها الى: 'كل شيء لكل شخص ثري في أي مكان'!

### Answers:

London's Most Famous Store, is the best title

### B- Write full answers to these questions. اكتب اجابات كاملة لهذه الأسئلة

- 1- What type of shop is Harrods? أي نوع من المحلات هارودز  
- It is a department store. انها متجر متعدد الأقسام (شامل)
- 2- Where is Harrods? أين تقع هارودز  
- It is in Knightsbridge, central London.
- 3- How old is it? كم مضى على افتتاحها  
- It is 179 years old.
- 4- Why did it have to be rebuilt in 1883? لماذا كان يجب إعادة بناءها عام ١٨٨٣  
- It was burned to the ground.
- 5- How many people go shopping at Harrods on a normal day?  
كم عدد الأشخاص الذين يذهبون الى هارودز في يوم اعتيادي?  
- 35,000 people go shopping at Harrods on a normal day.
- 6- When are there many more customers per day? متى يكون عدد الزبائن أكثر في اليوم  
- There are many more customers when there are sales.
- 7- Name three everyday things which can be bought at Harrods.  
سمي ثلاثة أشياء يمكنك شراؤها كل يوم من هارودز.  
- Bread, cheese and chocolate/sweets can be bought at Harrods.
- 8- What three occupations are mentioned in the article? ماهي المهن الثلاثة التي ذكرت  
- Three occupations mentioned are a president, a writer and a film director.
- 9- What do these words mean? ماذا تعني هذه الكلمات  
a- department store: a large shop which sells all kinds of things. متجر شامل  
b- confectionery: sweets حلويات  
c- wealthy: rich غني



10- How do you think Noel Coward would have felt about his gift?

كيف كان شعور نويل كاورد بهديته؟

11- What is your favourite shop? ماهو محلک المفضل

12- Say why you like it so much in two sentences. قل لماذا تحبه كثيراً بجمليتين

13- Which item that you have recently bought has given you the most pleasure? أي شيء اشتريته حديثاً منحك سروراً كثيراً؟

– (It can be something cheap or expensive, big or small, for you or for someone else.)

14- Explain in two sentences why you were so pleased with buying this thing. بجمليتين وضع لماذا كنت مسروراً كثيراً بشراءك هذا الشيء؟

(10, 11, 12, 13, 14: all the answers will be different.)

C- Write a story about a shopping trip that went wrong. Write about 150 words. Read this plan to help you.

أكتب قصة عن رحلة تسوق انتهت بشكل خاطئ. أكتب حوالي ١٥٠ كلمة. (انشاء مطلوب في الامتحانات)

### A shopping trip that went wrong

Last week I went with group of my school for Shopping Trip to Al-Mansoor mall. I wanted to buy some clothes for Eid Al Fiter. We went to the shop called Mango. It was a big shop and the assistant was very nice. "Can I help you?" He said when we entered the shop. "We are looking for modern shirt." I replied He showed us some of models then my friend asked him "How much is that blue one?" "Eighty dollars" he replied. "That's too much" I said and resumed "Can I take it in seventy dollars." He agreed. Then we asked him to wrap it up. When we left the shop we found that he wrapped up the wrong shirt. I was angry and we came back to the shop and we took the shirt. At last I thought it had all been a waste of time.

### رحلة تسوق انتهت بشكل خاطئ

ذهبت الاسبوع الماضي مع مجموعة من مدرستي الى مول المنصور لقد اردت شراء بعض الملابس لعيد الفطر. ذهبنا الى محل يسمى مانجو. كان محلاً كبيراً وكان عامل المحل لطيفاً جداً. "هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟" قال عندما كنا ندخل المحل. "نحن نبحث عن قميص عصري" اجبت. اراني بعض النماذج ثم سألته صديقي، "كم ثمن ذلك القميص الأزرق؟" "ثمانون دولاراً" اجاب. "ذلك كثير جداً" قلت وواصلت، "هل تستطيع شرائه بسبعين دولاراً؟" لقد وافق. بعد ذلك طلبنا منه تغليفه. عندما غادرنا المحل وجدنا انه قد غلف قميصاً آخر بالخطأ. كنت غاضباً وقد عدنا الى المحل واخذنا القميص. اخيراً فكرت ان كل ما حدث كان مضيعة للوقت.

### Student Book-Further Practice 1

Who was algebra invented by? من ابتكر علم الجبر

★ Make quiz questions by matching the sentence halves. Then listen and check. كُون أسئلة قصيرة بواسطة وصل أنصاف الجمل. ثم استمع ودقق.

1- Who was algebra (f) invented by? من ابتكر علم الجبر

2- When were the Hanging Gardens of Babylon (b) probably built? متى بنيت جنان بابل المعلقة؟

3- Who was The Thousand And One Nights (h) written by? من كتب كتاب ألف ليلة وليلة؟



4- Which tower in Iraq has a (c) revolving restaurant?

أي برج في العراق يحتوي على مطعم دوار؟

5- Where were the last Olympic Games (e) held?

أين أقيمت آخر الألعاب الأولمبية؟

6- What was the mascot (d) for the fifteenth Asian Games called?

ماذا كانت تسمى تعويذة الألعاب الآسيوية الخامسة عشر؟

7- When was the first flight by man (a) attempted?

متى كانت أول محاولة طيران لانسان؟

8- When was Al Zawra Zoo (g) opened?

متى افتتح متنزه الزوراء؟

★ Write the answers to the quiz questions. Check them in the Activity Book. Then do Exercise B.

أكتب الاجابات الى الأسئلة القصيرة.

### Answers:

1- f = Al Khawarizmi الخوارزمي

2- b = Arount 600 BCE (حوالي ٦٠٠ ق.م.)

3- h = Al Jahshiyari (in the 10<sup>th</sup> century). الجهشيارى (في القرن العاشر).

4- c = Baghdad Tower, in Al-Nisour Square. برج بغداد في ساحة النصور.

5- e = In London (2012) (في لندن عام ٢٠١٢)

6- d = Orry. حيوان المها العربي.

7- a = in the 9<sup>th</sup> century. في القرن التاسع.

8- g = 1971. Reopened 2003. عام ١٩٧١، واعد افتتاحه عام ٢٠٠٣.

### Activity Book- Further Practice 2

A- Read the story. Copy it out and use the prompts to add interesting details. اقرأ القصة. انسخها ثم استخدم المحفزات لتضيف تفاصيل مسلية.

During the spring holidays in July, I with my family went on a trip to the desert, a nature reserve in Karbala. My brother has his own car and he is a good driver. We left the house early at 6 o'clock because of the long route.

On the way, we stopped for breakfast and collect my cousin. It was a beautiful day and, as we drove, we saw beautiful white and brown camels. We got to Ain Tamor in Karbala around twelve o'clock. We had a picnic, had our lunch and we all were enjoyed. Then we looked around, we saw a wounderful attraction nature. I took some photos. We saw other tourists there who got to see the beautiful wildlife. After that we went to the Ukkaydir Fort near Ain Tamor. Then it was time to go home.

We had driven about 200 kilometres. When the car made a funny noise and stopped. My brother tried to start it again, but it was impossible. I had my mobile phone with me and I tried to phone home. Unfortunately, my mobile didn't work. Because there is no signal. We didn't know what to do. I and my mother were worried, but my mother was very brave. Then we saw a car coming, my brother waved at the car and it stopped. We couldn't believe our luck when we saw our uncle inside it. He was on his way back from his job in Karbala. 'Get in,' he said, and he drove us back to Karbala city to collect a mechanic for my brother's broken-down car. So our car repaired and my brother checked it, then we all returned back to home safely.



## UNIT EIGHT

### Lesson -1-

### الحلاق - A person who cuts hair

★ Answer Layla's question. Then listen and check your answer.

أجب على سؤال ليلى. ثم استمع ودقق اجابتك.

**Layla:** What do you call someone who talks to guests on a TV chat show?

**Hasan:** A presenter.

**Layla:** Thanks.

★ Match the descriptions on the left with the words on the right.

صل الأوصاف على اليسار مع الكلمات على اليمين.

- 1- the sweet stuff that bees make
- 2- a person who cuts hair professionally
- 3- the place where you get your hair cut
- 4- a thing that you sleep in when you go camping
- 5- the black stuff you burn on barbecues
- 6- the thing which men wear round their neck when they're wearing a suit
- 7- someone who fixes pipes in kitchens and bathrooms
- 8- people who are watching a show
- 9- a collection of things in a place where people can come and see them

- [i] honey - عسل
- [a] a hairdresser - حلاق
- [c] a salon - صالون
- [d] a tent - خيمة
- [h] charcoal - فحم
- [e] a tie - ربطة عنق
- [b] a plumber - سباك
- [f] an audience - جمهور
- [g] an exhibition - معرض / عرض

★ Ask and answer questions using both of the lists above.

اسأل وأجب على الأسئلة مستخدماً كلا القائمتين أعلاه.

#### Examples:

**A:** What do you call the sweet stuff that bees make? ماذا تسمى المادة الحلوة التي ينتجها النحل؟

**B:** Honey. عسل

**A:** What's honey? ماهو العسل

**B:** It's the sweet stuff that bees make. هو المادة الحلوة التي ينتجها النحل.



**Activity Book-Lesson 1**

**A- Write definitions for these words, using a relative pronoun each time.** أكتب تعاريف لهذه الكلمات، مستخدماً ضمير وصل كل مرة.

- 1- A competitor is someone who takes part in a competition or game. (منافس)
- 2- A necklace is something which women wear around their necks (for decoration). (عقد/قلادة)
- 3- A jeweller is someone who sells jewellery. (صانع/جوهري)
- 4- Snow is frozen rain/something that falls from the sky in winter in cold countries. (ثلج)
- 5- An island is land that is surrounded by water. (جزيرة)
- 6- An optician is someone who tests eyes. (فاحص البصر/نظاراتي)
- 7- Contact lenses are things that people can wear in their eyes to help them see better. (عدسات لاصقة)
- 8- A game show is a game that is played on television. (برنامج ألعاب على التلفاز)
- 9- A market is a place where you can buy all sorts of things. (سوق)
- 10- A time limit is the amount of time that is given to do something. (مهلة)
- 11- A soap opera is a TV drama that is about the lives of everyday people. (مسلسل تلفزيوني عن مشاكل الحياة اليومية)
- 12- A still life is a painting that has objects in it, not people. (لوحة زيتية تمثل أشياء غير حية)

**Lesson 2****Wouldn't it be great ! لن يكون كبيراً !**

★ Read and choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

اقرأ ثم اختر الكلمات الصحيحة لإكمال المحادثة.

apply يقدم طلباً	cinema هزلي	comedy مزاح	fun مرح	had
job وظيفة	motorcycle دراجة نارية	number	were	

**Rashid:** What are your plans for this summer?

**Justin:** If I ① had lots of money, I'd buy a ② motorcycle and drive around Europe.

**Rashid:** Could I come with you and sit on the back?

**Justin:** Ha, ha. Very funny. I don't have any money. So I won't even be able to go to the ③ cinema unless I get a holiday job pretty soon.



**Rashid:** I saw an ad for a ④ **job** that you might be interested in.

**Justin:** Really? What was it?

**Rashid:** They're looking for 80 extras كومبارس in a film. It's a ⑤ **comedy**.

**justin:** Wow! That would be ⑥ **fun**! How much are they paying?

**Rashid:** Quite a lot. I'm going to ⑦ **apply**. Do you want the ⑧ **number**?

**justin:** Yes, please. I'd better put it straight onto my mobile.

**Rashid:** If I ⑨ **were** you, I'd call them right away.

**justin:** Thanks. Wouldn't it be great if we both got parts?

### Answer the questions.

1- What does Justin mean when he says 'Very funny'?

ماذا يعني جاستن عندما يقول "مضحك جداً"؟

- He doesn't mean that this is funny. (He is being ironic). He has no money, so he can't even afford to go to the cinema, much less go to Europe.

2- What does 'pretty soon' mean? ماذا تعني عبارة "pretty soon" قريباً جداً.

- It means "very soon", this is a colloquial (لغة عامية) use of "pretty".

3- What are film 'extras'? ماذا تعني عبارة "كومبارس"؟

- They are people used in crowded scenes in films. They don't have to be actors.

### Activity Book-Lesson 2

A- Listen to a radio advertisement and complete the newspaper advertisement. استمع الى اعلان من الراديو ثم اكمل اعلان الصحيفة.

### Ahlen Productions

Ahlen Productions is looking for around 80 extras to take part in 'My Crazy Desert Life', a forthcoming comedy. Filming will be all day on Tuesday the fifth of July, and on Thursday the fourteenth of July, from seven a.m. until five p.m. That's Tuesday July the fifth, and Thursday July fourteenth, from seven a.m. until five p.m. So don't apply if you are not going to be free on those days.

Extras should not be shorter than 1 metre 65 and should be between 16 and 23 years old. So, no shorter than 1 metre 65, and no older than 23. Extras will receive 90,000 Iraqi dinars per day. Breakfast, lunch and other refreshments will be provided for all those taking part throughout the day.

Anyone interested in being in the film should come to an audition on Wednesday the twenty-fifth of May at 9 a.m. at the International Hotel. The International Hotel, of course, is on Abu Nawas Street. Sixteen- and seventeen-year-olds must bring a letter giving their parents' permission to take part.

For further information, please call Yusuf Malouf or Nabil Halabi on 635770. That's six-three-five, double seven oh.



## Ahlen Productions

Around ① **80** film extras are needed for a new comedy film, ② **My Crazy Desert Life**. The scenes will be filmed on ③ **Tuesday 5<sup>th</sup>** July and ④ **Thursday 14<sup>th</sup>** July, from ⑤ **7** a.m. until ⑥ **5** p.m. We are looking for extras who are over 1 metre ⑦ **65** in height and who are aged over ⑧ **16** and under ⑨ **24**. Pay will be ⑩ **90,000** Iraqi dinars per day. Auditions are being held on Wednesday ⑪ **25<sup>th</sup> May** at ⑫ **9** a.m. at the International Hotel on ⑬ **Abu Nawas** Street.

A letter giving their parents' permission to take part must be brought by anyone aged under ⑭ **18**. For more information, call Yusuf Malouf or Nabil Halabi on ⑮ **635770**.

**B- Imagine you are going to an interview for an audition. Write a short description of yourself. What details do you think you should include?**

تخيل انك ذاهب الى مقابلة أداء. اكتب وصفا قصيرا عن نفسك. ماهي التفاصيل التي تعتقد أن عليك أن تقدمها في المقابلة.

**Example:**

"Hashim Raheem graduated from University, in 1985 with a degree in communications. For several years, I worked as a "Building Relationships" columnist for the Heritage Trust Publications in Arizona before relocating to Champaign, Illinois, to pursue graduate study in management and leadership. I completed a master of science in English literature from the University of Illinois in 2000. I published two books. "Building a Team through Management Keys" and "Leadership Is Not Ownership," which garnered the prestigious "Golden Leader" award from the Association of Managers. I'm live in Illinois."

## عزيزي الطالب

ان هذه الملزمة التي بين يديك هي نفس الملزمة التي يعتمد عليها مدرس المادة في تدريسه الخصوصي حيث هي خلاصة جهد الاستاذ وهي خاضعة للتنقيح والتجديد المستمر من قبل مدرس المادة فاطلب النسخة الاصلية من

مكتب الشمس حصرا



### Lesson 3

## تم اصطيادها أخيرا! Caught at last!

### Vocabulary : مفردات

handle (v.) يمسك/يقود

guilty مذنب

dump (v.) يتخلص من/يهزم

justice (n.) عدل/حق

★ Read the article quickly. What is your opinion of this story?

اقرأ المقالة بسرعة. ماهو رأيك بهذه القصة؟ (قطعة مهمة في الامتحانات)

Caught at last!	تم اصطيادها أخيرا
<p>The terrified resident of a block of flat in London can finally sleep peacefully at night. An enormous snake that was living in toilet pipes in the block of flats has been caught at last.</p> <p>The snake a three metre long boa constrictor, had been seen in different toilets in the building over the past three months. At first no one knew where the animal had come from. Then, one of the residents saw a local news report about the escape of a boa constrictor from London Zoo.</p> <p>The snake was first seen by James Andrews. 'I got up in the night to go to the bathroom,' Mr Andrews told reporters, 'and I saw a huge snake in the toilet. It was horrible. I didn't know what to do. I wondered if I was dreaming. My wife came to look and she was very frightened. We put some heavy books on the toilet seat and went back to bed. In the morning, the snake had gone.'</p> <p>People in six other flats in the building also saw the snake but they were all too frightened to try to catch it. On two occasions, the fire brigade were called, but when they arrived, the snake had already disappeared.</p> <p>Finally the snake was found last night on Mr and Mrs Mailer's bathroom floor on the eighth floor of the building. It was caught in a large bucket and the police were called. The snake was taken back to its home in the zoo, to everyone's relief.</p>	<p>المقيمون الخائفين في شقق مبنى في لندن يمكنهم أخيرا أن يناموا بسلام ليلا. أفعى ضخمة كانت تعيش في أنابيب الحمامات في شقق المبنى تم اصطيادها أخيرا.</p> <p>الأفعى، التي طولها ثلاثة أمتار من نوع أفاعي البواء الأمريكية التي تعتصر فرائسها، قد شوهدت في مختلف الحمامات في المبنى خلال الشهور الثلاثة الماضية. في أول الأمر، لم يعرف أحد من أين جاءت هذه الأفعى. بعد ذلك، شاهد أحد المقيمين تقريرا اخباريا محليا عن هرب أفعى بواء من حديقة حيوان لندن.</p> <p>شوهدت الأفعى أولا من قبل جيمس أندروز 'نهضت ليلا للذهاب الى الحمام،' يخبر السيد أندروز المراسل، 'وشاهدت أفعى ضخمة في الحمام. كان شيئا رهيبا. لم أكن أعرف ماذا أعمل. تساءلت ان كنت أحلم. جاءت زوجتي لتشاهد لكنها ارتعبت. وضعنا بعض الكتب الثقيلة على مقعد الحمام وعدنا الى فراشنا. في الصباح كانت الأفعى قد اختفت.</p> <p>الناس في ستة شقق أخرى في المبنى شاهدوا أيضا الأفعى. لكنهم جميعا كانوا مرتعنين جدا ليحاولوا الإمساك بها. في حالتين، تم استدعاء فرقة الاطفاء، لكن عندما وصلوا، كانت الأفعى قد اختفت حالا.</p> <p>أخيرا، وجدت الأفعى الليلة الماضية في حمام طابق السيد والسيدة ميلر في الطابق الثامن من المبنى. لقد تم مسكها في دلو كبير وتم استدعاء الشرطة. تم إعادة الأفعى الى مكانها في حديقة الحيوان، ليرتاح الجميع.</p>



## ★ Write questions for these answers. اكتب أسئلة لهذه الاجابات

- 1- A three-metre long snake . أفعى طولها ثلاث أمتار .  
- What has been caught at last? ماذا أمسكوا أخيراً؟
- 2- In a bathroom on the eighth floor. في حمام في الطابق الثامن .  
- Where was it caught? أين تم مسكها؟
- 3- It had escaped from London Zoo. هربت من حديقة حيوان لندن .  
- Where had it come from? من أين أتت؟
- 4- People were too frightened, or it had disappeared. كان الناس مرعوبين، أو أنها كانت مختبئة .  
- Why had it not been caught before? لماذا لم يتم مسكها من قبل؟
- 5- Back to the zoo. أعيدت الى حديقة الحيوان .  
- Where was it taken to? الى أين أخذت؟

## أسئلة عن القطعة

1. How many long was the boa? كم هو طول الأفعى؟  
- It was a three metre long. كانت بطول ثلاثة أمتار .
2. By whom was first seen it? من شاهدها لأول مرة؟  
- By James Andrews. جيمس أندروز .
3. On two occasions, the fire bridge were called, but when they arrived, the snake had already **disappeared**.  
في حالتين، تم استدعاء فرقة الاطفاء، لكنها عندما وصلت، كانت الأفعى قد اختفت.
4. The snake was caught in a large **bucket** and the **police** were called.  
أمسكت الأفعى بواسطة دلو/ سطل وتم استدعاء الشرطة.

## Activity Book-Lesson 3

A- Read and complete this text. Put the verbs into the correct tense of the passive. اقرأ ثم أكمل هذا النص. ضع الأفعال بالصيغة الصحيحة للمبني للمجهول.

Every year, hundreds of snakes ① **are bought** (buy) by people who want an unusual pet. Unfortunately, these animals ② **are not always looked after** (not always look after) very well. Sometimes they ③ **are left** (leave) without food or water to die, and sometimes they ④ **are thrown out** (throw out) by people who no longer want them once they grow too big to handle.

Last year, twelve imported pet snakes ⑤ **were found** (find) in city locations around the United Kingdom. A man who left one in a flat in Manchester ⑥ **has still not been found** (still not find) by the police. The police and animal protection groups have said that pets should not ⑦ **be bought** (buy) unless they can ⑧ **be taken** (take) care of. They say that anyone guilty of dumping snakes or other pets ⑨ **will/should be brought** (bring) to justice.



## Lesson 4

### رحلات في الجزيرة العربية - Travels in Arabia

★ Work with a partner. You are both newspaper reporters. You have both interviewed a famous traveller who is now 90. He told you about his travels in Arabia. Did he give you the same information?  
بشكل ثنائي مع زميلك، كلاكما مراسلان صحفيان، أجريتما مقابلة مع رحالة مشهور عمره الآن ٩٠ سنة. أخبركما عن رحلاته في الجزيرة العربية. هل أعطاكم نفس المعلومات؟

**Student B:** Use Activity Book pages 204/205.

**Student A:** First, fill in the blanks to complete the information the traveller gave you.

The traveller said: قال الرحالة

- 1- I first travelled to the south of Arabia in 1945.
- 2- The Wali said that 10 local men must travel with me.
- 3- We had three camels to ride, but we walked most of the time.
- 4- Our food was mostly milk and dates.
- 5- Sometimes we killed animals.
- 6- After 90 days, we returned to Salala, but I made many more Journeys in the desert.
- 7- Altogether, I spent 5 years exploring the Arabian desert.
- 8- of course, I could speak Arabic, and three other languages too.
- 9- After Arabia, I travelled in Egypt.
- 10- when I became too old to travel, I made my home in Egypt.
- 11- I've written twelve books about my travels.
- 12- My latest book will be published in Lebanon.
- 13- The best thing about travelling in unexplored places is to being a pioneer to explore them.

★ Now tell your partner what the traveller told you. Listen to what he told your partner. How many differences are there?

الآن أخبر زميلك ماذا أخبرك الرحالة. استمع الى ماذا أخبر زميلك. كم عدد الاختلافات؟

**Example:**

**Student A-** He told me he had travelled to the south of Arabia in 1945.

**Student B-** That's different. He told me he had travelled to the south of Arabia in 1946.



**Activity Book-Lesson 4**

**B- Listen and complete the messages, changing the tenses of the verbs.** (استمع ثم أكمل الرسائل، غير صيغ الأفعال. (الكلام غير المباشر في الجمل الخبرية)

**Tapescript:****One.****Manal:** Hello this is Manal. I went to the shop and I bought some oil.**Two.****Jassim:** Hi, this is Jassim. We're all going to the cinema with Faisal.**Three.****Nisrin:** Nisrin here. My father wants to speak to Ahmed.**Four.****Haidar:** Haidar speaking. We'll be at the bus station at 10 o'clock.**Five.****Ameena:** This is Ameena. I have found the keys of the office.**Six.****Kamal:** Hello, this is Kamal. I'm waiting in front of the supermarket.**Seven.****Salwa:** Salwa here. I'm going to be at my aunt's house until five o'clock.**Eight.****Bilal:** Bilal speaking. I've got two tickets for the football match.**Nine.****Sara:** This is Sara. Everybody must get to school early because of the trip.**Ten.****Ibrahim:** Hello, Ibrahim here. I did all the questions in Exercise 2.

- 1- Manal said that she had been to the shop and bought some oil.
- 2- Jassim said that they were all going to the cinema with Faisal.
- 3- Nisrin said that her father wanted to speak to Ahmed.
- 4- Haidar said that they would be at the bus station at 10 o'clock.
- 5- Ameena said that she had found the keys of the office.
- 6- Kamal said that he was waiting in front of the supermarket.
- 7- Salwa said that she was going to be at her aunt's house until 5 o'clock.
- 8- Bilal said that he had got two tickets for the football match.
- 9- Sara said that everybody must get to school early because of the trip.
- 10- Ibrahim said that he had done all the questions in Exercise 2.



## Lesson 5

### ماذا سألوك؟ What did they ask you?

#### Vocabulary : مفردات

volunteer متطوع	management ادارة/تدبير
reference مصدر	research بحث/يبحث
sense of humour حس الدعابة	communicate يتواصل
current (a present) الحالي	

★ اكمل الحوار بهذه الكلمات . Complete the dialogue with these words .

job volunteer head teacher interview

Huda: I had my ① interview this morning.

Ameena: What for?

Huda: You know! I applied to be a ② volunteer at the next Olympics.

Ameena: Oh, yes. Sorry, I forgot. What did they ask you?

Huda: The director asked me if I had any previous experience in sports management. And he also asked me how many foreign languages I spoke. Then his assistant asked me if I enjoyed meeting new people.

Ameena: Do you think you'll get the ③ job?

Huda: I think so. At the end of the interview, the director asked me if he could get a reference from my ④ head teacher.

★ Imagine you are going to interview people applying for these jobs. Suggest two questions to ask each of them. Use your imagination or words and phrases from the box.

تخيل انك ذاهب لمقابلة أشخاص يقدمون طلبات لهذه الوظائف. اقترح سؤالين لتسأل كل منهما. استخدم خيالك أو كلمات وعبارات من الصندوق.

- receptionist موظف استعلامات
- TV presenter مقدم برامج تلفزيونية
- sports instructor معلم رياضة
- flight attendant مضيف طيران
- journalist صحفي
- tour guide مرشد سياحي

#### Examples:

receptionist: - Do you speak any foreign languages?

- Can you work under pressure?

flight attendant: - Do you enjoy travelling?

- Do you think you have a good sense of humour?



**TV presenter:** - Do you think you are able to communicate clearly?  
- Are you interested in entertainment?

**journalist:** - Can you type?  
- How good are your writing skills?

**sports instructor:** - Are you a good swimmer?  
- Do you have my experience of teaching?

**tour guide:** - How good is your knowledge of the local sights?  
- Are you interested in local history?

### **Activity Book-Lesson 5**

**A- Anna is telling a friend about her interview for a job. Write reported questions based on the direct questions.**

تخبر أنا صديقتها عن مقابلتها لـ بوب. أكتب أسئلة غير مباشرة مبنية على الأسئلة المباشرة.

#### **Questions Anna was asked at her interview:**

- 1- Where are you working at the moment?  
- They asked me where I was working at the moment.
- 2- What computer programs are used in your current job?  
- They asked me what computer programs were used in my current job.
- 3- How many people have you got working under you?  
- They asked me how many people worked under me.
- 4- Do you have to travel a lot in your current job?  
- They asked me if I had to travel a lot in my current job.
- 5- Where did you learn to speak Arabic?  
- They asked me where I had learned to speak Arabic.
- 6- Do you speak it fluently?  
- They asked me if I spoke if fluently.
- 7- How many other languages do you speak?  
- They asked me how many other languages I spoke.
- 8- Have you ever worked in the Middle East?  
- They asked me if I had ever worked in the Middle East.
- 9- How long were you the editor of the local magazine?  
- They asked me how long I had been editor of the local magazine.
- 10- When will you be free to start the job?  
- They asked me when I would be free to start the job.
- 11- Can you type?  
- They asked me if I could type.
- 12- Have you got a clean driving licence?  
- They asked me if I had got a clean driving licence.



## Activity Book-Revision

**A- Complete the second conditional sentences in ways that are true for you.** أكمل جمل الحالة الشرطية الثانية بطرق تكون صحيحة لك.

- 1- If I (can) could be any animal, I'd like to be a falcon.
- 2- If I (speak) spoke lots of languages, I could be an interpreter.
- 3- If I (have) had my own plane, I could/would travel to all over the world.
- 4- If I (not be) wasn't so tired, I'd watch the match tonight.
- 5- If I (not be) wasn't so busy, I'd go with you to the cinema.
- 6- If I (can) could choose any career, I could be a pilote.

**C- Match the orders on the left to the reasons on the right. Then write sentences with *You'd better ... because....***

صل الأوامر على اليسار الى الأسباب على اليمين ثم اكتب الجمل مع *You'd better ... because ...*

- 1- Be quiet. (g) Everyone's asleep.
- 2- Change your clothes. (c) It might be a very formal party.
- 3- Change some money now. (a) You mightn't have time later.
- 4- Listen. (b) I'm not going to say this again.
- 5- Tell one of your parents. (e) They might be worried.
- 6- Take a sweater. (d) It might be cold.
- 7- Write it down. (f) You might forget it.

- 1- You'd better be quiet because everyone's asleep..
- 2- You'd better change clothes because it might be a very formal party.
- 3- You'd better change some money now because you mightn't have time later
- 4- You'd better listen because I'm not going to say this again.
- 5- You'd better tell one of your parents because they might be worried.
- 6- You'd better take a sweater because it might be cold.
- 7- You'd better write it down because you might forget it.

## Activity Book-Test 1

**A- You are going to hear someone talking about what's on TV this week. Listen and tick one answer about each programme.**

انت ستسمع الى شخص ما يتحدث عن ما سيعرض على التلفاز هذا الاسبوع. استمع ثم اشر اجابة واحدة عن كل برنامج.

### Tapescript:

#### One.

Now it's time for *What's On*, when we tell you about this week's TV programmes.

Tomorrow at 8.30 *there's a film made in 2003 and being shown on television for the first time. It's My Broken Heart, a romantic story of a young woman who cannot marry the man she loves. A word of warning! The story has a very sad ending.*



**Two.**

On Sunday you can see the regular show with Steve Mason - Steve's Night Out. But it's at a new time - ten thirty, instead of ten o'clock. There will be lots of interesting talk. Among Steve's guests this week are the tennis star Maria Sharapova and English singer Joss Stone.

**Three.**

On Monday, at the normal time of 6.15, you'll be able to follow the story of life in Camden Square in your favourite soap opera, Londoners. Gerry has left home, but he can't find a job. Sandy gets into trouble with her boss when she's late for work at the supermarket. And Mrs Harrison ends up in hospital.

**Four.**

Later on Monday, at nine o'clock, you can see House Colours. Martin Phillips tells you how to decorate your kitchen without spending too much money. One of Martin's bright ideas is: 'Don't hide your cooking pots in a cupboard - hang them on the wall and make it look like a professional kitchen.'

**Five.**

On Tuesday we have the World Cup qualifying match between Denmark and Saudi Arabia. That starts at 7.15 and as a result, our usual music programme Cool Tracks is cancelled, and all our other programmes will be about one hour later than usual. After the match you can join a discussion on the Internet - just go to our Sports World website and follow the links.

**Six.**

For lovers of wildlife, our education series on Wednesday afternoon looks at the dangerous life of dolphins in the Mediterranean Sea. Lebanese film maker Jamil Abu Salem has studied these lovely animals for four years. His film shows that fishing boats from Morocco, Italy, France and Turkey are killing thousands of dolphins every year - not intentionally, but by accident. The nets they use for catching fish also catch dolphins. Abu Salem's film looks at several ways of saving the Mediterranean dolphin.

**1- The film My Broken Heart**

**a-** was first shown on TV in 2003.

**b-** may make you cry. (✓)

**c-** is about an operation in hospital.

**2- Steve's Night Out**

**a-** is a chat show. (✓)

**b-** is going to start earlier than usual.

**c-** is about sport.

**3- In Londoners**

**a-** you will hear some new songs.

**b-** Gerry wants to work with Sandy at the supermarket.

**c-** everyone seems to have problems. (✓)



## 4- House Colours

a- is a lifestyle programme. (✓)

b- is about saving money.

c- is about cooking.

## 5- The football match

a- will be on the Internet.

b- will be later than usual.

c- will have an effect on the usual programmes. (✓)

## 6- The wildlife film could have the title

a- Dolphins around the World.

b- Fishing for Dolphins.

c- The Mediterranean Dolphin in Danger. (✓)

## C- Complete each sentence with a suitable word. أكمل كل جملة بكلمة مناسبة.

**Example:** He's tired all the time and never wants to do anything. He has very little energy at the moment.

1- There's a fire in that house. Quick, call the fir brigade.2- Two people have been seriously hurt in the accident. We need to call an ambulance.3- The writers and editors don't decide how to arrange the text and photos on a page. That's a job for the designer.4- Change the word kids to children, please. The word kids is too informal for this article.5- I loved the way the children could fly and walk through walls in that film. I thought the special effects were fantastic.6- We have wonderful sports facilities in Baghdad now.7- I'd like to make an appointment to see the bank manager, please.8- I wouldn't like to be a contestant in a TV game show.9- I want to have my own business. I'd like to be an employer, not an employee.10- My brother plays football so well he wants to become a professional player.

## D- Circle the word in each group that doesn't belong. Choose the correct name for each group.

ضع دائرة حول كلمة في كل مجموعة لاتعود لها. اختر الاسم الصحيح لكل مجموعة.

art	cooking	describing food	newspapers
types of film		TV programmes	

**Example:**

boil

drink

fry

heat

→ cooking

1- article

font

headlinerealistic

→ newspapers

2- cartoon

forecast

horror

thriller

→ types of film

3- chat show

game show

soap opera

still life

→ TV programmes

4- comedy

exhibition

painting

gallery

→ art

5- parsley

salty

spicy

tasteless

→ describing food



## E- Choose the best way to complete each sentence. Write the letter.

اختر افضل طريقة لاكمال كل جملة، أكتب الحرف.

- 1- It's really late we'd better go home now.  
a- We better **b- We'd better** c- We'd better to
- 2- If I were you, I'd ask the doctor about the cut on your hand.  
a- was b- am **c- were**
- 3- Do you ever wish you had more money?  
a- have **b- had** c- having
- 4- I feel sick. I wish I hadn't eaten so much chocolate.  
a- don't eat b- can't eat **c- hadn't eaten**
- 5- I really wish you could come with us tomorrow.  
**a- could** b- can c- will
- 6- There's plenty of time. We don't have to do this essay until next week.  
**a- don't have** b- didn't have c- mustn't
- 7- How many questions did you have to answer in the test last week?  
a- must you b- did you **c- did you have**
- 8- The dentist told me not to eat sweets or chocolate.  
**a- not to eat** b- not eating c- mustn't eat
- 9- Layla asked if she could come on the picnic with us.  
a- can she **b- if she could** c- she could
- 10- My brother asked me where I had been.  
a- you have b- I have **c- I had**
- 11- Nowadays, a lot of good films are being made in the Middle East.  
a- are making b- were made **c- are being made**
- 12- A lot of changes have been made since your last visit.  
**a- have been made** b- were made c- are made
- 13- I really think something should be done about the rubbish in the park.  
a- could do b- must be doing **c- should be done**
- 14- Do you remember that place where we had a picnic last year?  
a- which **b- where** c- whose
- 15- Where did you have your bike repaired?  
a- repair b- repairing **c- repaired**



## Activity Book-Test 2

**A- Read the text and tick the four topics the article tells us about.**

اقرأ النص ثم أشر أربعة عناوين تجربنا المقالة عنها.

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1- conditions needed for growing rice. (✓) | 4- traditional uses of rice. (✓) |
| 2- rice-growing methods in Asia. (✓)       | 5- growing rice in Europe.       |
| 3- the price of rice.                      | 6- growing better rice. (✓)      |

Did you know that rice is eaten by half the world? Every year about 600 million tonnes of it are harvested. Most of the world's rice is grown in China, India and Indonesia. China produces 31%, India produces 20% and Indonesia produces 9% of the world's rice.

Rice has to be grown in warm, wet conditions. It takes between 110 and 200 days to mature.

While it is growing, it needs to be kept wet. For this reason, it is usually grown on flat land in places which have a long rainy season. It can also be grown near rivers that flood, such as the Nile in Egypt.

In most of Asia, the traditional methods of cultivating and harvesting rice by hand are still practised. Animals such as water buffalo are used to prepare the rice fields. At the same time, rice seeds are planted in seedling beds. After 30 days, the small rice plants are moved to the rice fields. If it does not rain during the growing season, the land has to be watered by hand. In fact, it takes 5,000 litres of water to produce just one kilo of rice.

Rice is not always used as food. It is also used in traditional ceremonies. In Bali, Indonesia, they often put a little rice on banana leaves to be eaten by ghosts! In Japan, dry rice plants are placed over the doors of houses to keep ghosts away. In India, rice is thrown at the bride and her husband at weddings. It is thought it will bring luck to the couple who are getting married. This is also done at weddings in Europe and the United States.

Because of Asia's rising population, rice production has to be increased by 60% by the year 2020. The rice plant will therefore have to be improved. Scientists are trying to find a type of rice that can be grown on less land with less water. Many different methods are being used to improve rice seeds, including genetic engineering. Nobody is quite sure how many varieties of rice exist at the

هل تعلم ان الرز يؤكل من قبل نصف العالم؟ كل عام يحصد حوالي ٦٠٠ مليون طن منه. معظم رز العالم يزرع في الصين، الهند وأندونيسيا. تنتج الصين ٣١٪، الهند ٢٠٪ وأندونيسيا تنتج ٩٪ من رز العالم.

يجب أن يزرع الرز في أجواء دافئة ورطبة. انه يستغرق بين ١١٠ و ٢٠٠ يوم حتى ينضج.

خلال نموه، يحتاج لأن يبقى رطباً. لهذا السبب، فانه عادة يزرع في أرض منبسطة في أماكن ذات فصل طويل المطر. يمكنه أيضاً أن يزرع قرب الأنهار التي تفيض، مثل نهر النيل في مصر.

في أغلب قارة آسيا، الطرق التقليدية للحراثة وحصاد الرز باليد لاتزال تمارس. الحيوانات مثل جاموس الماء يستخدم لتحضير حقول الرز. بنفس الوقت، بذور الرز تزرع في مغرس البذور، بعد ٣٠ يوم، نباتات الرز الصغيرة تتحول الى حقول الرز، اذا لم تمطر خلال موسم الزراعة، فان الأرض يجب أن تروى باليد. في الحقيقة، تتطلب ٥٠٠٠ لتر ماء لإنتاج فقط كيلو واحد من الرز.

لايستخدم الرز دائماً كطعام. انه يستخدم أيضاً في مناسبات تقليدية. في مدينة بالي، أندونيسا، هم غالباً يضعون القليل من الرز على أغصان الموز ليؤكل من قبل الأشباح! في اليابان، توضع نباتات الرز الجافة فوق أبواب المنازل لإبعاد الأشباح، في الهند، يرمى الرز على العروسة وزوجها في حفلات الزواج. اعتقد انه سيجلب الحظ الى الشخصين اللذين سيتزوجان. يتم ذلك أيضاً في حفلات الزواج في أوروبا والولايات المتحدة.

بسبب ارتفاع السكان في قارة آسيا، فان انتاج الرز يجب أن يزداد بنسبة ٦٠٪ في العام ٢٠٢٠. ان نبات الرز لهذا السبب يجب أن تتحسن. يحاول العلماء ايجاد نوع من الرز يمكن أن يزرع بمساحة أقل وماء أقل. العديد من الطرق المختلفة استخدمت لتحسين بذور الرز، بضمنها الهندسة الوراثية. لأحد متأكد تماماً كم عدد أنواع الرز في الوقت



moment, but it is thought that there are probably around 140,000 different types. Scientists are confident that the perfect variety of rice plant will be produced soon. It will be one which does not need too much water or land and which grows fast and produces a large amount of rice.

الحاضر، لكن يعتقد أنها ربما حوالي ١٤٠ ألف نوع مختلف، العلماء واثقون أن النوع المثالي لنبتة الرز ستنتج قريباً. انها ستكون نبتة لا تحتاج الى ماء كثير أو أرض واسعة وانما تنمو أسرع وتنتج كمية كبيرة من الرز.

**B- Read the text again and mark these statements T (True), F (False), or D (Doesn't say).** اقرأ النص مرة أخرى ثم اشر هذه الجمل بصح (T)، خطأ (F) أو (D) لم يقلها.

- 1- Rice is eaten by half the people of Europe. (D)
- 2- Indonesia produces less rice than India. (T)
- 3- Rice should not be planted near rivers. (F)
- 4- Rice farmers in Japan use a lot of machines. (F)-by implication
- 5- Rice is ready to be picked and processed 30 days after being planted. (F)
- 6- Rice has to be kept wet while it is growing. (T)
- 7- In many countries it is considered very unlucky to throw rice away. (D)
- 8- Rice is used at wedding ceremonies in some countries. (T)
- 9- Scientists have stopped trying to improve the rice plant. (F)
- 10- The ideal rice plant would use even more water and grow more slowly. (F)

**D- Write a story of about 100 words with the following title:**  
A very difficult day.

اكتب قصة من ١٠٠ كلمة بعنوان: يوم صعب جداً.

انشاء مطلوب في الامتحان

### A very difficult day

Last month I decided to visit my brother Salam in Cairo. So, I asked my friend Leith to drive me to the airport. Leith got lost on his way to my house and arrived very late. When we got to the airport, Leith drove away, and I ran in to catch my flight. But the plane had already left. I had to buy another ticket for the next flight. The next flight leaves in five hours' time! I would like to call my brother to tell him I will be late, but I forget my mobile phone at home. And I didn't think to bring a book, so I can't read to pass the time. Even worse, I don't have any money on me, so I can't buy anything to drink or eat.

### يوم صعب جداً

قررت الشهر الماضي زيارة اخي سلام في القاهرة. لهذا طلبت من صديقي ليث ان يقطني الى المطار. اضاع ليث طريقه الى بيتي ووصل متأخراً جداً عندما وصلنا المطار اسرعت للحاق بطائرتي، لكن الطائرة كانت قد غادرت تواء. كان علي ان اشترى بطاقة أخرى للرحلة القادمة، تغادر الرحلة القادمة خلال خمس ساعات! أود أن اكلم أخي لأخبره انني سأتأخر، لكنني نسيت هاتفي في البيت. ولم أفكر بجلب كتاب معي، لهذا لا أستطيع القراءة لقضاء الوقت. والأسوأ، انني لا أملك نقوداً معي، لهذا لا أستطيع شراء أي شيء لاشرب أو أكل.



## Literature Focus

### Section B: The Tempest

**The Tempest: by William Shakespeare:** مسرحية العاصفة وليم شكسبير

William Shakespeare was born in 1564 in Stratford-upon-Avon in the middle of England. As a young man, Shakespeare worked as an actor before becoming the most popular playwright of his generation. Today he is still the most famous dramatist in Britain, and indeed throughout the world. His plays are performed in every major language and his poetry has also been widely translated.

The Tempest was written in 1610-1611. It was first performed at the Royal Court of King James, and later performed again to celebrate the marriage of his daughter, Elizabeth (later Queen Elizabeth I). It is often thought of as Shakespeare's farewell to the stage, because it is probably the last play Shakespeare wrote by himself. (He is known to have written some plays with other playwrights such as Thomas Middleton and John Fletcher.

The Tempest is a Renaissance comedy, but this does not mean it is simply funny. A comedy, at this time, is a play that can include humour but the important thing is that it ends happily - usually with one or more marriages for the main characters.

The extract below is taken from Act I, Scene ii, in which Caliban argues with Prospero. Prospero is a magician, and the most powerful person in the play. Caliban is his servant, and a dark and complex character often called a 'monster' by the others. The fact that Caliban is a native of the island and the other characters are colonizers is a key theme in the play. In his first speech to his master, Caliban argues that Prospero has stolen the island from him. Caliban's second, short speech is one of the most famous in the play and indeed in English literature.

ولد وليم شكسبير عام ١٥٦٤ في مدينة ستراتفورد-أبون-أفون في وسط انكلترا. كرجل شاب، عمل شكسبير كممثل قبل ان يصبح من اكثر كتاب المسرح شهرة من ابناء جيله. واليوم لا يزال من أشهر المسرحيين في بريطانيا والعالم. لقد مثلت مسرحياته بأكثر اللغات المعروفة ولشعره ايضا ترجماته الواسعة.

كتبت مسرحية العاصفة في ١٦١٠-١٦١١. وكانت أول مسرحية مثلت في البلاط الملكي للملك جيمس، وفيما بعد مثلت مرة أخرى للاحتفال بزواج ابنته، إليزابيث، (التي أصبحت فيما بعد الملكة إليزابيث الأولى). واعتبرت غالبا بمثابة توديع شكسبير لخشب المسرح، لأنها ربما آخر مسرحية كتبها شكسبير بنفسه. (لقد عرف بأنه كتب بعض المسرحيات مع كتاب مسرحيين آخرين مثل توماس ميدلتون وجون فليشر).

مسرحية العاصفة هي مسرحية هزلية لمسرح عصر النهضة، ولكن هذا لا يعني انها هزلية بشكل بسيط. ان الهزل، في هذا الوقت، هي مسرحية يمكن ان تتضمن الضحك ولكن شيئا مهما أنها تنتهي بشكل سعيد عادة مع زواج أو زواجات للشخصيات الرئيسية للمسرحية. المقتطف أدناه مقتبس من الفصل الأول، المشهد الثاني، الذي فيه يتناقش (كاليبان) مع (بروسبيرو). بروسبيرو هو ساحر، والشخص الأكثر قوة في المسرحية و(كاليبان) هو خادمه، والشخصية الغامضة والمعقدة وغالبا ما تسمى (الوحش) من قبل الآخرين. الحقيقة هو ان (كاليبان) هو أحد مواطني الجزيرة والشخصيات الأخرى هم مستعمرون وهم مفتاح الفكرة الرئيسية في المسرحية. في أول كلامه لسيده، يناقش (كاليبان) أن بروسبيرو قد سرق الجزيرة منه. حديث (كاليبان) الثاني والقصير هو واحد من الأكثر شهرة في المسرحية وفي الأدب الانكليزي حقيقة.



وقبل ان نبدأ، عزيزي الطالب، بدراسة المقتطف من مسرحية العاصفة أرى ضرورة أن يتعرف الطالب على قصة المسرحية هذه، لذا ادرج في أدناه ملخص لقصة العاصفة منقولاً من كتابي (قصص مسرحيات شكسبير – The Stories of Shakespeare's Plays) الصادر عام ٢٠١٠ عن دار الأرقم للطباعة بغداد والمودع لدى دار الكتب والوثائق ببغداد برقم ١١٨٦ لسنة ٢٠١٠. والكتاب عبارة عن ترجمة لعشر من قصص مسرحيات شكسبير بضمنها مسرحية العاصفة.

## العاصفة THE TEMPEST

### الشخصيات في القصة:

بروسبيرو، الدوق الحقيقي لمدينة ميلان.  
أنطونيو، أخو بروسبيرو.  
ميراندا، ابنة بروسبيرو.  
ألونزو، ملك نابلس.  
سيباستيان، أخو ملك نابلس.  
فرديناند، ابن ألونزو (ملك نابلس).  
غونزالو، نبيل مستقيم.  
أريل، جني.  
كاليبان، عبد (ابن الساحرة الشريرة التي ماتت).

مرة، في زمان سابق، وفي بلاد بعيدة في إيطاليا، كان يوجد دوق في مدينة ميلان يدعى بروسبيرو. كان رجلاً حكيماً ومتعلماً، وكان يستمتع كثيراً بالكتب أكثر من استمتاعه في حكم بلاده. لقد ترك الشؤون السياسية إلى أخيه أنطونيو، بينما كان هو يدرس العلوم الغريبة وكتب السحر. كان أنطونيو يغار من أخيه. لقد شعر عندما مكث أخيه بروسبيرو في إيطاليا لفترة، أنه كان دائماً يعامل كأنه دوق ميلان الحقيقي. لقد أراد أنطونيو ذلك اللقب لنفسه. وهكذا، فقد وضع مع ألونزو، ملك نابلس، خطة شريرة. لقد قرأ أن يتخلص من بروسبيرو بعيداً عن بلاده، وبذلك يمكن لأنطونيو حكم ميلان مكانه.

في إحدى الليالي العاصفة المظلمة، كان بروسبيرو قد أخذ بسرية كسجين من قبل أعداءه ونقل إلى ساحل البحر. وقد أخذت معه ابنته الصغيرة، ميراندا، البالغة ثلاث سنوات، ووضعها داخل زورق قديم بلا أشعة ولا مجاديف. أمر أنطونيو أن لا يأخذاً معهما شيئاً – حتى الطعام، لقد كان متأكداً أن الزورق القديم سيفرق في العاصفة البحرية، وسيغرق معه كل من بروسبيرو وميراندا. لم يكن أنطونيو ليجرؤ أن يقتلها في ميلان، لأنه يعرف كم هو الحب الكبير الذي يكنه لهما شعب ميلان.

كان يوجد رجل كبير كريم بين نبلاء ألونزو، يدعى غونزالو. لقد وضع هذا الرجل سرا طعاماً وملابس دافئة وماءاً داخل الزورق، وأضاف عليها بعض كتب بروسبيرو، لأنه يعرف حب الدوق لمكتبته. اندفع الزورق الصغير إلى البحر، وبعد عدة ساعات انكسر بواسطة الأمواج بشكل بائس. كانت ميراندا الصغيرة لا تعرف الخوف بسبب صغر سنّها، قد غلبها النوم بسلام في قعر الزورق، ولكن بروسبيرو بدأ يشك بأنهما سوف لن يشاهدا الأرض ثانية. أخيراً، انتهت العاصفة وكان البحر هادئاً مرة أخرى، ربما كان لسحر بروسبيرو تأثيره مع "إتاهما، لقد كان ذكياً، وقد تمرن على فنون السحر. ربما إن الجن الطيبون كانوا يحرصونه وابنته الصغيرة. أيا كان السبب، عندما حل الصباح شاهد بروسبيرو أمامه جزيرة في البحر، وحالاً تهيأ ليوجه الزورق إلى الساحل الرملي. لقد هبط بسلام وحمل ميراندا النائمة إلى كهف كملجأ لهما، ثم عاد إلى الزورق ليجلب ملابسهما وكتبه الثمين. لقد كانت كتبه تلك المساعد الكبير له في السنوات التالية.

لقد بدا أن الجزيرة لم يسبق أن عاش عليها بشر. لكنها كانت خضراء ومثمرة، إضافة إلى ما فيها من فاكهة وخضروات وافرة، وجداول مياه عذبة. قرر بروسبيرو أنه سيمكنه وابنته الصغيرة العيش هناك والراحة طويلاً قدر ما هو ضروري. لقد اكتشف حالاً وجود جن على الجزيرة، كان مسروراً أنه قضى عدة سنوات في دراسة السحر. لقد زودته معرفته قوة على جميع هذه المخلوقات الغريبة، كان رئيس الجن في الجزيرة يدعى أريل. في أحد الأيام، كان بروسبيرو يمشي خلال الغابات ووجد أريل بالصدفة. لقد سمع صوتاً يبكي بحالة يرثى لها، من داخل شجرة، تمكن بروسبيرو باستخدام سحره أن يشق الشجرة ويفتحها.

انفجر متفعلاً، من دهشته، جنياً صغيراً جميلاً من وسط الشجرة، كان هذا الجني هو أريل، رئيس الجن. كان لأريل قصة يرويها. لقد سجن في الشجرة لاثني عشرة سنة، بواسطة سحر امرأة عجوز شريرة تدعى سيكوراكس. عندما جاءت سيكوراكس إلى هذه الجزيرة أولاً، رفض أريل وعدد آخر من الجن طاعتها، ولعاقبتهم فقد سجنهم جميعاً داخل تلك الأشجار. والآن هي قد ماتت، ولا أحد سكن على الجزيرة ماعدا ابنتها نصف المجنون والبشع المدعو كاليبان.

حرر بروسبيرو كل الجن من سجنهم داخل الأشجار. وقد وعدوه، معترفين بجميله، على مساعدته بإخلاص بأي شيء يأمرهم بعمله. بعد ذلك



ذهب بروسبيرو للبحث عن كاليبان البشع. لقد وجده مختفياً خائفاً في كهف. لقد حاول في البداية أن يعلم هذا المخلوق البانس بعضاً من معرفته. لقد علمه أسماء الشمس والقمر، وأطعمه من ثمار التوت والماء، وكان لطيفاً وعطوفاً عليه. لكن كاليبان كان شريراً، غيباً وناكراً للجميل، وأخيراً جعله بروسبيرو عبداً له. كان عليه أن يجلب الماء ويقطع الخشب للنار، وقد سكن في كهف صغير لوحده. وهكذا عاش بروسبيرو وميراندا على هذه الجزيرة الساحرة، يساعدهم الجن ويخدمهم كاليبان البشع، الذي كان يشبه كثيراً حيواناً متوحشاً أكثر من كونه رجلاً.

مرت اثنتي عشر سنة، كبرت خلالها ميراندا لتكون بنتاً جميلة. لم تشاهد ميراندا خلال هذه السنوات كأنثى بشرياً ماعدا والدها. إنها لا تتذكر أي شيء عن حياتها في ميلان، لأنها كانت صغيرة جداً عندما غادرت إيطاليا. إنها أيضاً لا تعرف أن والدها كان دوقاً لميلان. لقد اكتفت تماماً لتعيش على الجزيرة وأن لا تسأل عن أي شيء مختلفاً عن حياتها هذه.

بعد ذلك، وفي أحد الأيام، كانت قد هبت عاصفة رهيبية. وقفت ميراندا على الشاطئ، تراقب الأمواج العاتية والأمطار الغزيرة تنجرف عبر البحر. فجأة شاهدت سفينة تنقل بواسطة تيار قوي نحو الصخور. في تلك الأيام لم تكن توجد سفن بخارية، وأن أسرع السفينة كانت تدار بواسطة الريح وأن الأمواج القوية كانت تغسل ظهر المركب. رغم صوت العاصفة، استطاعت ميراندا أن تسمع البحارة يصرخون طلباً للمساعدة.

لقد سمعته يصرخون: "الجميع ضالون! التضرع لله! التضرع لله! الرحمة بنا!" أسرعت ميراندا لتخبر والدها. وبالتأكيد، هرع والدها مع الجن لمساعدتهم، وبواسطة معرفته بالسحر، استطاع أن يفعل شيئاً ما لإنقاذ السفينة.

لم يكن بروسبيرو يبدو عليه أنه كان قلقاً حول مصير البحارة. لقد أخبر ميراندا أن جميعهم سيكونون بخير وأن السفينة لم تصب بأي ضرر. أنه بنفسه تسبب في العاصفة، لقد قصد أن يخيف الناس على ظهرها، ولكن لا أحد منهم سيفرق، وكذلك السفينة ستنقذ. سألتها ميراندا، "لكن لماذا تفعل هذا؟ هؤلاء الرجال لم يؤذوك أبداً."

ابتسم بروسبيرو عند حزنها، وقال لها بلطف: "منذ سنوات عديدة مضت قد آذوني أذى كبيراً، يا طفلي. لقد حان الوقت لأخبرك بكل شيء حول ذلك. دعينا نجلس على هذه الصخرة بينما تستمعين إلى قصتي."

وهكذا جلست ميراندا عند قدمي والدها وقص عليها حياتهما في مدينة ميلان، وسبب عيشهما وحيدان الآن على هذه الجزيرة. أنهى رواية قصته بالقول: "أنا لا أزال دوق ميلان الحقيقي، والآن جاءت فرصتي لانتقم نفسي على أعدائي. أنهم جميعاً على ظهر تلك السفينة يترجون في الأمواج. لقد رتب ألفوز، ملك نابلس، لابنته لتتزوج ملكاً أجنبياً، وقد استأجر هذه السفينة لنقلهم عبر البحر إلى أفريقية. لقد انتهى حفل الزواج، وهم الآن عائدون إلى نابلس. إن ابن الملك، فرديناند، مع والده على ظهر السفينة، وشقيقي أنطونيو وأخو الملك، سيباستيان، هما أيضاً معهم. لقد علم بروسبيرو كل هذا بواسطة قواه السحرية العجيبة، وقد رتب لذلك العاصفة. لقد ساعده أربيل في جعل السفينة أن تنجرف نحو الجزيرة بواسطة الرياح، وذلك هو ما ظهر لهم أن السفينة قد تحطمت على ساحل صخري.

لقد وعد بروسبيرو ابنته، "لا أحد سيتأذى، ولكنهم يجب أن يعاقبوا ويندموا على قسوتهم علينا". وثقت ميراندا بوالدها وعرفت بأنه سوف لن يخلف وعده لها. وهكذا، فقد تعب مع احتياج العاصفة، وتمددت ميراندا على الأرض واستغرقت في النوم. بعد ذلك استدعى بروسبيرو أربيل إليه، لأنه كان لديه الكثير من العمل لينجزه أربيل.

لقد كان صباح أربيل مملوفاً بالعمل وشعر بالتعب والمنهكة، وبدأ يتشكى إلى سيده. قال أربيل، "ماذا؟ هل هناك عمل آخر؟ ألا تتذكر أنك وعدتني بإعطائي حريتي إذا خدمتك بإخلاص في هذا الأمر؟ لقد جلبت السفينة إلى الجزيرة والآن أريد أن أكون حراً."

أجابته بروسبيرو، "لم يحن الوقت بعد، هل نسيت كيف أنقذتك من سجن فضيع؟ هل تريد أن تسجن في تلك الشجرة مرة أخرى؟ إن خدمتي لليومين التاليين، ستكون حراً لتذهب أينما تشاء."

قال أربيل شاكراً، "ذلك هو يا سيدي الكريم!". ماذا سأفعل؟ قل ماذا؟ ماذا سأفعل؟ -

أخبره بروسبيرو أن يتخذ شكل جنى البحر. فقط بروسبيرو وحده يمكنه أن يراه، أما الآخرون فيتمكنون من سماع صوته فقط. قال بروسبيرو، "اجلب فرديناند إلى هنا". ذهب أربيل يبحث عن ابن الملك. كان فرديناند يغتسل على الشاطئ لوحده، على جانب واحد من الجزيرة، وكان ممتلئاً حزناً وياساً لأنه اعتقد أن والده وكل الآخرين على السفينة قد غرقوا. فجأة سمع صوتاً غامضاً يغني له، وقد جعلته الكلمات أن يبقى يائساً أكثر. لأن الصوت كان يخبره أن والده قد غرق، مستقراً في قعر البحر. (كانت هذه فكرة أربيل للمزحة، وأيضاً للقسوة). سار المسكين فرديناند في اتجاه الصوت، وقاده إلى الغابات. تساءل فرديناند، "ماذا كانت هذه الموسيقى؟ بالتأكيد هذه جزيرة يجب أن تكون مسحورة!". أين تكون هذه الموسيقى؟ هل أنها في الهواء أو في الأرض؟ -

شاهدت ميراندا فرديناند يسير نحوهم، وقد كانت مندهشة. لم يسبق لها أن شاهدت شخصاً جميلاً وقد شعرت بالتأكيد أنه يجب أن يكون جنياً. أخبرها بروسبيرو، "كلا، أنه ليس جنياً، أنه يأكل وينام مثلاً. لقد كان على ظهر السفينة، وهو الآن يبحث عن والده وأصدقائه."

نظر فرديناند إلى الأعلى وشاهد ميراندا. وقد كان متأكداً أيضاً، أنها لم تكن من الكائنات البشرية. فكر فرديناند، "هذه يجب أن تكون الجنية التي كانت تغني بصوت عذب جداً". لقد سألتها إن كانت هي التي تغني. أجابت ميراندا، "كلا، أنا من البشر، مثلك". لقد كان فرديناند مندهشاً بشكل كبير لسمع كلامها بنفس اللغة التي يتكلم بها هو. لقد جعله لطفها وجمالها أن يحبها حالا، ومن جانبها، هي أيضاً أحبه.

كان ذلك تماماً ما تمناه بروسبيرو وهو - أن يحب فرديناند وميراندا أحدهما الآخر ويتمنى الزواج منها. بابتهاج، يعد بروسبيرو أربيل، "يا أربيل الرقيق! سأعلنك حراً على عملك هذا. ولكن أولاً تمنى أن يختبر فرديناند، ليكون متأكداً بأنه كان حقيقة صادقاً في حبه إلى ميراندا. وهكذا فإنه تحدث بغضب إلى الرجل الشاب، متظاهراً بالاعتقاد أن فرديناند كان عدواً. لقد اتهمه بأنه منافس له، يريد أن يأخذ جزيرة بروسبيرو والحكم عليها بنفسه. رفض فرديناند هذه الفكرة، وتوسلت ميراندا والدها أن لا يتحدث بهذه الخشونة مع الرجل الشاب المسكين، لكن بروسبيرو لم يأخذ بملاحظاتهما.



قال إلى فرديناند: "تعال معي! سأجعلك سجين عبيدي. سأربط رقبتيك وقدميك بسلسلة. سأطعمك من الجذور الميتة وستشرب من ماء البحر. اتبعني!". كان فرديناند غاضباً جداً، أنه ابن ملك، كيف يعامل هكذا! لقد كانت اهانة! حاول أن يسحب سيفه ليقاتل بروسبيرو، لكنه وجده لا يتحرك من غمده. لقد كانت قوة سحر بروسبيرو كبيرة جداً عليه. قرر فرديناند أنه يمكنه أن يظهر حبه إلى ميراندا بشكل أفضل بواسطة تنفيذ ما أمره به بروسبيرو ليفعله. لقد شعرت ميراندا بالخجل من معاملة والدها لهذا الرجل الشاب اللطيف. قالت إلى فرديناند: "كن مرتاحاً! إن والدي هو الطف مما يبدو. أنا متأكدة بأنه سوف لن يؤذيك". وهكذا أطاع فرديناند أمر بروسبيرو وذهب إلى الكهف. وهنا عمل على قطع الخشب ونقل أجزائه. مثلما كان يفعل كاليبان. لكنه أربز عمله بابتهاج وبدون تشكي. أنه راض لأنه كان قريباً من ميراندا. بالنسبة إلى ميراندا، فإنها لم تتمكن من فهم تصرف والدها. إذا عرف والدي أن فرديناند هو ابن ملك نابلس، فكيف يجرو أن يعامل الرجل الشاب مثل عبيد؟ لقد جعل هذا الأمر ميراندا أن تبكي لمجرد التفكير به. لقد بدا المسكين فرديناند متعباً مع عمل غير معتاد عليه، وقد طلبت منه أن يسمح لها لتساعده.

قالت له، "إن والدي صعب التفكير. أتوسل إليك الآن أن تريح نفسك. انك بعيد عن الأذى لهذه الساعات الثلاثة". لكن فرديناند استمر في العمل، وبينما كان يعمل أخبر ميراندا أنه أحبها كثيراً. قال لها، "إن قلبي يطير لخدمتك، ولأجلك أنا رجل الخشب الصابر هذا. سأنته ميراندا، هل تخبني؟". كرر فرديناند أنه أحبها، وأعطى وعده لها ليتزوجها حالما يتمكن من العودة إلى نابلس. قالت ميراندا، "لم يسبق أن شاهدت أي رجل من قبل، ماعدا والدي، لكنني لا أتمنى لمصاحبة أحد في العالم سواك". كان بروسبيرو يستمع إلى حديثهما، ولكن دون أن يراه فرديناند وكذلك ميراندا. لقد تأكد الآن، أن فرديناند كان رجلاً طيباً وسيكون دائماً صادقاً مع ميراندا. لهذا فقد ظهر لهم مرة أخرى وابتمس إلى فرديناند. قال بروسبيرو، "إذا بدوت لك قاسياً، فإنه فقط لكي أختبر حب أحدكما إلى الآخر. الآن أنا أشعر أنه يمكنني أن أؤمن ابنتي إلى رعايتك يا فرديناند. حالما تعود إلى نابلس يمكنك أن تتزوجها".

كان فرديناند وميراندا مبهجين جداً، وقد تركهما بروسبيرو سوية. قانلاً بأن لديه عمل لينجزه. خلال ذلك، وعلى الجانب الآخر من الجزيرة، كانت هنالك أمور لم تنفذ بشكل جيد. حيث استراحة رجال السفينة الذين اغتسلوا قرب الشاطئ. كان الملك ألونزو متعباً وتعبساً، لأنه كان متأكداً أن ولده فرديناند قد غرق. كان غونزالو، الرجل الكبير الطيب الذي ساعد بروسبيرو في السابق، يحاول أن يريح ملكه بقوله أن فرديناند كان سباحاً ماهراً. لقد شاهد البحارة الرجل الشاب يسبح بقوة نحو الشاطئ، وكان غونزالو متأكداً أن فرديناند يجب أن يكون قد وصل إلى مكان ما في الجزيرة. لكن ألونزو لم يكن مرتاحاً. لقد بدا له أنهم يجب أن يفتشوا كل الجزيرة حالاً، لقد بحثوا لعدة ساعات، لكنهم لم يجدوا ولده.

قال الملك بحزن، "كلا، كلا، لقد مات. لقد غرق. لا يمكننا البحث أكثر. دعونا \* نلس ونستريح". كان معهم أنطونيو، أخو بروسبيرو، وسيباستيان، أخو الملك، وكانوا جميعهم جالسون سوية على العشب. لقد كان أرييل يتبعهم دائماً، كان يعمل أصواتاً مزعجة عالية ومخيفة حولهم، وقد امتلأت قلوبهم بالخوف والارتباك. كانوا جائعين وعطشى، أيضاً، ولكن لم يكن لديهم شيء لياكلوا ويشربوا، لهذا لف ألونزو وغونزالو معطفيهما حول نفسيهما واستغرقا في النوم سريعاً. كان أنطونيو الشرير، منشغلاً إلى خدعه القديمة. وهذه المرة كان يخطط ليقول صديقه السابق، ألونزو، ويجعل سيباستيان ملكاً على نابلس مكانه. كان كل من ألونزو وغونزالو نائمين بسلام ولم يكن هنالك أحد ليشهد على الجريمة. لكن بروسبيرو، خلال قواه السحرية، عرف ماذا كان أنطونيو وسيباستيان يخططان لعمله. لقد أرسل أرييل ليحمي الملك، وليخيفهم جميعاً كثيراً جداً بحيث أنهم سيكونون متأسفين حقيقة عن عملهم الوحشي السابق مع بروسبيرو وميراندا. وصل أرييل بالوقت المناسب، لقد وجد أنطونيو وسيباستيان، وسيخفيهما بأيديهما، واقفين فوق الملك النائم، لقد أيقظ غونزالو وألونزو بدون أي ضرر قد يحدث.

لكن الملك بقي ليتعلم درساً، وليعاقب على جرائم الماضي. فجأة سمع الرجال المرتبكين موسيقى غريبة وجميلة، وأن أرييل والجن الآخرين، قد لبسوا أشكالاً غامضة. أقاموا وليمة رائعة أمامهم، ولكن حالما جلس الرجال الجائعون لياكلوا، غير أرييل نفسه إلى هيئة طير بشع كبير. لقد طار بشكل مزعج فوق الطاولة، جاعلاً كل شيء ليختفي. بقي أرييل في هيئة الطير، تحدث إلى ألونزو، أنطونيو وسيباستيان. قال لهم، "أنتم الرجال الأشرار الثلاثة، لقد تم سحبكم إلى هذه الجزيرة الوحشة لأنكم مولعون كثيراً بالأذى. طالما تعيشون مع رجال آخرين". لقد استمر ليخبرهم بأن هذا كان عقابهم عن جريمتهم ضد الدوق بروسبيرو، وأن شيئاً واحداً فقط يمكن أن ينقذهم من الموت على هذه الجزيرة. يجب أن يظهروا ندماً حقيقياً عن أعمالهم الشريرة، وأن يعدوا أن يعيشوا حياة أفضل في المستقبل. ومن ثم، مع البرق المتوهج حوله وصوت الرعد العالي، اختفى أرييل.

لقد امتلأ ألونزو، أنطونيو وسيباستيان رعباً وأسفاً. لقد حدثت أشياء عنيفة وقصيدة لهم خلال الأربع وعشرون ساعة الماضية، وقد عرفوا أن العقوبة كانت واحدة. لقد أقسموا أنهم سيكونون أفضل الرجال في المستقبل.

بعد ذلك، ظهر بروسبيرو أخيراً أمامهم بمعطفه السحري. لقد فكر بأنهم قد عوقبوا كفاية من خلال كل ما عانوه منذ بداية العاصفة. في البداية لم يعرفوه، ولكن عندما أزال معطف السحر شاهدهوه. لقد توسلوا جميعاً إليه أن يفر لهم وطلبوا منه أن يعود كدوق إلى مدينة ميلان.

استدار بروسبيرو إلى ألونزو، وقال، "يما انك أرجعت إلي دوقية ميلان، فإنني سأكافئك معها بشيء جيد". وأخذته إلى مدخل الكهف الذي كان بيته لزمناً طويلاً. كان ألونزو شاكراً إلى بروسبيرو عندما نظر في الداخل وشاهد فرديناند جالساً هناك مع بنت جميلة! عندما أخبره أن البنت كانت ميراندا، ابنة بروسبيرو، توسل إليها ألونزو أن تسامحه عن معاملته السابقة لوالدها، وعندما سمع أن فرديناند كان يريد الزواج من هذه البنت الجميلة، كانت سعادته حقيقة كبيرة.

والآن، قاد المخلص أرييل البحارة الضائعون إلى ملكهم ألونزو، وجلبوا الأخبار أن السفينة لم تنكسر. كما خشي الجميع. في اليوم التالي أبحر الجميع عائدين إلى ميلان، حيث تزوج فرديناند وميراندا. وقد حكم بروسبيرو مرة أخرى كدوق لمدينة ميلان، وقد حل الابتهاج الكبير جميع شعبه.

طار أرييل مع السفينة حتى إيطاليا، ليحميها من العواصف. ومن ثم كان حراً إلى الأبد. لقد طار بعيداً عبر البحر، يغني بسعادة.



ان المسرحية عزيزي الطالب كتبها شكسبير باللغة الانكليزية القديمة في زمانه آنذاك  
كما سترى في المقتطف أدناه.

**Extract from The Tempest**  
**(Act I, Scene ii)**

**مقتطف من مسرحية العاصفة**  
**(الفصل الاول - المشهد الثاني)**

**Caliban:** This island's mine, by Sycorax my mother,  
Which thou takest from me. When thou camest first, Thou  
strokedst me and madest much of me, wouldst give me  
Water with berries in't, and teach me how To name the  
bigger light, and how the less, That burn by day and night:  
and then I loved thee And show'd thee all the qualities o' the  
isle, The fresh springs, brine-pits, barren place and fertile:  
Cursed be I that did so! All the charms Of Sycorax, toads,  
beetles, bats, light on you! For I am all the subjects that you  
have, Which first was mine own king: and here you sty me In  
this hard rock, whiles you do keep from me The rest of the  
island. □

**كاليبان :** هذه جزيرة تعود لي لقد تركتها  
امي سيكوراكس لي لكنك اخذتها مني.  
عندما جئت هنا اولاً، كنت لطيفاً معي  
واهتممت بي. اعطيتني الماء مع التوت. لقد علمتني  
اسماء الشمس والقمر. لقد احببتك لهذا اظهرت  
لك كل مزايا الجزيرة: ينابيع المياه العذبة،  
مواقع الماء المالح، الاماكن المجدبة (القاحلة)  
والاماكن المثمرة. انا العن نفسي لانني فعلت  
ذلك! والعنك مع فترات سحر امي: ازعاجات  
الطرق، مطارق وضربات. انا موضوعك الوحيد  
على هذه الجزيرة، انت ملكي الوحيد. لكنك  
تسجنني في هذا الكهف ولا تدعني اذهب حول  
الجزيرة.

**[In modern English:** This island belongs to me. My  
mother, Sycorax, left it to me, but you've taken it. When you  
first came here, you were nice to me and took care of me. You  
gave me water with berries in it. You taught me the names  
for the sun and the moon. I loved you then. So I showed you  
all the qualities of the island: the freshwater springs, the  
saltwater pits, the barren places, the fertile places. I curse  
myself that I did that! I curse you with Sycorax's magic  
spells: plagues of roads, beetles and bats. I am your only  
subject on this island; you are my only king. But you  
imprison me in this cave and don't let me go around the rest  
of the island.]

**بروسبيرو :** أيها العبد الكريه. لا يمكنك ان  
تكون طيباً، أنت مؤهل للشر أنا أسفك عليك  
عملت بجهد لاعلمك التحدث، وعلمتك اشيء  
جديدة طيلة الوقت انت لم تعلم ماذا كنت  
تقول، وتكلمت مثل حيوان، لقد ساعدتك  
لتجد الكلمات الصحيحة. لكنك امتلكت  
دماً سيئاً. انك مهما تعلمت، فان الناس الطيبون لم  
يرغبوا ان يكونوا بقريك. لهذا فان عليك ان  
تسجن في هذا الكهف انت تستحق اسوأ من  
السجن.

**Prospero:** Abhorred slave,  
Which any print of goodness wilt not take,  
Being capable of all ill! I pitied thee,  
Took pains to make thee speak, taught thee each hour  
One thing or other: when thou didst not, savage, Know thine own  
meaning, but wouldst gabble like  
A thing most brutish, I endow'd thy purposes  
With words that made them known. But thy vile race  
Though thou didst learn had that in't which good natures  
Could not abide to be with; therefore wast thou  
Deservedly confined into this rock,  
Who hadst deserved more than a prison.

**[In modern English:** You hateful slave, you can't be made  
good, you are capable of all evil. I pitied you, worked hard to  
teach you to speak, and taught you new things all the time. You  
didn't know what you were saying, and would speak like an  
animal. I helped you find the right words. But you have bad blood  
in you. However much you learnt good people did not want to be  
near you. So you had to be locked up in this cave. You deserve  
worse than prison.]

**Caliban:** You taught me language; and my profit on't  
Is, I know how to curse. The red plague rid you For learning  
me your language! □

**كاليبان :** أنت علمتني النطق، لكن كل ما  
استطيع فعله هو ان اقسم والعن. أنا العنك لانك  
علمتني لغتك.

**[In modern English:** You taught me language, but all I  
can do with it is swear and curse. I curse you for teaching  
me your language!]



**أسئلة عن وليام شكسبير - Questions about Willian Shakespears**

1. Who is William Shakespeare? من هو وليام شكسبير  
- He is the most famous dramatist and poet in Britain, and throughout the world. هو من أكثر الكتاب المسرحيين والشعراء شهرة في بريطانيا والعالم.
2. Where and when W. Shakespears was born? أين ومتى ولد  
- He was born in 1564 in Stratford-upon-Avon in England. ولد عام ١٥٦٤ في مدينة ستراتفورد - أبون - أفون في انكلترا.
3. What did Shakespeare work when he was a youn man before becoming the most popular playwright of his generation?  
ماذا عمل شكسبير عندما كان شاباً قبل أن يصبح من أكثر كتاب جيله شهرة؟  
- He worked as an actor. عمل كمثل
4. Did Shakespeare's plays performed in every major language?  
هل مثلت مسرحياته بأكثر اللغات المعروفة؟  
- Yes they did, and his poetry has also been widly translated. نعم، ولشعره أيضاً ترجماته الواسعة.
5. Shakespeare is known to have written some plays with other playwrights such as **Thomas Middleton and John Fletcher**.  
لقد عرف ان شكسبير كتب بعض المسرحيات مع كتاب مسرحيين آخرين مثل **توماس ميدلتون و جون فليشر**.
6. When was "The Tempest" written?  
متى كتب شكسبير مسرحية العاصفة؟  
- It was written in (1610-1611).

**أسئلة حول المسرحية - Questions about the play**

1. The Tempest is often thought of as Shakespeare's farewell to the stage.  
اعتقد غالباً ان مسرحية العاصفة هي بمثابة توديع شكسبير لخشبة المسرح.
2. Why the Tempest is often thought of as Shakespeare's farewell to the stage?  
لماذا اعتقد غالباً ان مسرحية العاصفة هي بمثابة توديع لشكسبير لخشبة المسرح؟  
- because it is probably the last play Shakespeare wrote by himself. لأنها ربما آخر مسرحية كتبها شكسبير بنفسه.
3. The Tempest is a Renaissance comedy.  
مسرحية العاصفة هي مسرحية هزلية لمسرح عصر النهضة.
4. The Tempest was first performed at the Royal Court of King James.  
مثلت المسرحية لأول مرة في البلاط الملكي للملك جيمس.
5. Prospero is a magician, and the most powerful person in the play.  
بروسبيرو هو ساحر، والشخص الأكثر قوة في المسرحية.
6. Caliban is a native of the island and he is Prospero's servant, and a dark and complex character often called a "monster" by the others.  
كاليبان هو أحد مواطني الجزيرة وهو خادم بروسبيرو، والشخصية الغامضة والمعقدة وغالباً ما يسمى بـ "الوحش" من قبل الآخرين.
7. What is this scene about?  
حول ماذا يدور هذا المشهد؟  
- This scene is about an argument between Caliban and Prospero. يدور المشهد حول مجادلة بين كاليبان و بروسبيرو.



8. What is a key theme in the play? ما هو الموضوع الرئيسي في المسرحية؟  
 - The fact that Caliban is a native of the island and the other characters are colonizers is a key theme in the play. الموضوع الرئيسي للمسرحية هو ان كاليبان من مواطني الجزيرة وان الآخرين هم مستعمرون.
- 9- Who is Prospero? من هو بروسبيرو؟  
 - He is formerly the Duke of Milan and he's a magician, and the most powerful person in the play. كان دوق ميلان وهو ساحر، والشخص الأكثر قوة في المسرحية.
- 10- Who is Caliban? من هو كاليبان؟  
 - He is Prospero's servant, and a dark and complex character often called a "monster" by the others. هو خادم بروسبيرو وشخصية غامضة ومعقدة يدعوها الآخرين بالوحش.
- 11- The two spirits who reside on the island with Prospero and Miranda are Caliban and Ariel. الروحان اللتان تقيمان على الجزيرة مع بروسبيرو وميرندا هما كاليبان وارييل.
- 12- Prospero was formerly the Duke of Milan. كان بروسبيرو سابقا دوق مدينة ميلان.
- 13- Prospero's magical power comes from his books. قوة سحر بروسبيرو تأتي من كتبه.
- 14- Caliban is the son of Sycorax, the magician woman. كاليبان هو ابن الساحرة سيكوراكس.

### List of Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle
be يكون	was/were	been
become يصبح	became	become
bring يجلب	brought	brought
break يكسر	broke	broken
buy يشتري	bought	bought
come يأتي	came	come
do يفعل	did	done
eat يأكل	ate	eaten
fall يسقط	fell	fallen
feel يشعر	felt	felt
find يجد	found	found
fly يطير	flew	flown
forget ينسى	*forgot	forgotten
get يحصل	got	got
give يعطي	*gave	given
go يذهب	*went	been / gone
have يملك	had	had



hear يسمع	heard	heard
hit يضرب	hit	hit
hurt يؤذي	hurt	hurt
know يعرف	knew	known
leave يغادر/يترك	left	left
lend يقرض	Lent	lent
let يدع	let	let
lose يفقد	lost	lost
make يصنع	made	made
meet يقابل	met	met
pay يدفع	Paid	paid
put يضع	put	put
read يقرأ	read	read
ring يدق	rang	rung
rise يرفع	rose	risen
run يركض	ran	run
say يقول	raid	said
see يرى	saw	seen
send يرسل	sent	sent
sing يغني	sang	sung
speak يتكلم	spoke	spoken
spend يصرف/يقضي	spent	spent
swim يسبح	swam	swum
take يأخذ	took	taken
tell يخبر	told	told
think يفكر	thought	thought
throw يرمي	threw	thrown
try يحاول	tried	tried
write يكتب	wrote	written

مع أطيب تمنيات مكتب الشمس بالنجاح الباهر والمستقبل الزاهر

الفرع الأول: حي الجامعة - شارع الربيع - قرب نفق الشرطة - هـ ٠٧٨٣٢٥٧٠٨٨٠

الفرع الثاني: بداية سوق السراي - قرب المتحف البغدادي - هـ ٠٧٨٣٢٥٧٠٨٧٩

موبايل / ٠٧٩٠١٧٥٣٤٦١ - ٠٧٨٠٥٠٣٠٩٤٢